

Master Index

for Complete Set:
ANSI/HI Pump Standards,
Version 4.1



ANSI/HI Pump Standards: Version 4.1

Master Index for Complete Set

This index is not part of any standard, but is presented to help the user in considering factors beyond the standards.

Note: Bold numbers indicate the standard number, nonbold numbers indicate the page number;
an f. indicates a figure, a t. indicates a table.

- "Information completed by" categorization, **50.7**: 13
 See also R/D/S field designations, Work process designations
- "U" value, **9.6.8**: 11
 scores, **9.6.8**: 15
- Abbreviations and definitions, **50.7**: 28
- Abrasion–corrosion, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 43
- Abrasive fluids and residual mechanical unbalance of rotating parts, **9.6.4**: 17
- Abrasive handling capabilities, **3.1-3.5**: 2
- Abrasive wear, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 43
- Absolute pressure (p_a), **3.6**: 3
- Absolute pressure (p_a), defined, **3.1-3.5**: 19
- Accelerating deployment of ISO 15926 project, **50.7**: 3
- Acceleration head, **6.1-6.5**: 31–34, **8.1-8.5**: 14
- Acceleration pressure, **6.1-6.5**: 31–34, **7.8**: 6, **8.1-8.5**: 14
 defined, **7.8**: 3
- Accelerometers, **9.6.9**: 12
- Acceptance level
- Accuracy and performance, defined, **7.8**: 3
- Accuracy, **9.6.9**: 27
 alarm limits defined, **9.6.9**: 5
 defined, **9.6.5**: 55
 leakage guidelines, **9.6.9**: 11
 power guidelines, **9.6.9**: 6
 rate-of-flow guidelines, **9.6.9**: 13
 speed (rpm) guidelines, **9.6.9**: 14
 temperature guidelines, **9.6.9**: 9
 vibration guidelines, **9.6.9**: 13
- Acidity, of water, **2.3**: 79
- Acoustic sensors, in bearing wear monitoring, **9.6.5**: 21
- Actuating mechanism. *See* Valve gear
- Adapters, **2.3**: 64
- Added mass, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Adhesive wear resistance of wrought materials, **9.1-9.5**: 11 t.
- AEX XML Schema, **50.7**: 1, 2, 29
 and construction materials and properties, **50.7**: 24
 and W3C schema namespace declaration, **50.7**: 26
 and XPath, **50.7**: 28
 and XSD file names and associated namespaces, **50.7**: 27
 collection-container type, **50.7**: 25, 27f., 29
 content, **50.7**: 23
 core data type, **50.7**: 24, 27 f., 29
 core object type, **50.7**: 24, 27 f., 29
 document namespaces, **50.7**: 26
 equipment data foundation files, **50.7**: 23
 file folder structure, **50.7**: 26
 for equipment items, **50.7**: 23, 24 f.
 getting started with, **50.7**: 23
 namespaces, **50.7**: 26, 30
 prerequisites and tools, **50.7**: 23
 structural design, **50.7**: 24, 25 f.
 subject type, **50.7**: 25, 27 f., 29
 testing conformance to, **50.7**: 21
 use of namespaces, **50.7**: 26, 27f., 30
 versions and revisions system, **50.7**: 25
 where to find, **50.7**: 23
- Affinity rules, **1.3**: 69
- Air entrainment, **4.1-4.6**: 16, 23
- Air gap, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9, **5.1-5.6**: 16
- Airborne sound instrumentation
 acoustical calibration, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 octave-band analyzer, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 recorders, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 sound-level meter and microphone system, **9.1-9.5**: 28
- Airborne sound level test report, **9.1-9.5**: 41 f.
- Airborne sound readings
 averaging, **9.1-9.5**: 40
 corrections for background noise, **9.1-9.5**: 39 t.
 corrections, **9.1-9.5**: 39
- Air-operated bellows pumps, **10.1-10.5**: 1, 2 f.
 bellows selection and materials, **10.1-10.5**: 13
 features, **10.1-10.5**: 12
 handling of harsh chemicals, **10.1-10.5**: 12
 handling of hot liquids, **10.1-10.5**: 12
 malfunction causes and remedies, **10.1-10.5**: 20, 22 t.
 typical services, **10.1-10.5**: 11
- Air-operated diaphragm pumps, **10.1-10.5**: 1 f., 1
 and rate of flow, **10.1-10.5**: 13
 diaphragm selection and materials, **10.1-10.5**: 13
 features, **10.1-10.5**: 12
 handling of hazardous liquids, **10.1-10.5**: 11
 liquids and slurries handled, **10.1-10.5**: 11
 malfunction causes and remedies, **10.1-10.5**: 20, 21 t.
 pump controls, **10.1-10.5**: 13
 pumping of dry powders, **10.1-10.5**: 12
 typical applications, **10.1-10.5**: 11

- Air-operated pump tests, **10.6**: 1
 - air consumption, defined, **10.6**: 6
 - air consumption, measurement of, **10.6**: 14
 - cavitation, defined, **10.6**: 6
 - cycle rate (n) defined, **10.6**: 3
 - cycle rate (n), measurement of, **10.6**: 14
 - cycle, defined, **10.6**: 3
 - datum, defined, **10.6**: 4
 - definitions, **10.6**: 1
 - displacement per stroke (D), defined, **10.6**: 4
 - dry suction lift defined, **10.6**: 9
 - dry suction lift, water lift test method, **10.6**: 10
 - dry suction lift, vacuum gauge test method, **10.6**: 10
 - dry suction lift, vacuum gauge with enclosed tank test method, **10.6**: 10
 - effective diaphragm area (AEFF), definition and equation, **10.6**: 4, 4f.
 - elevation head (Z), defined, **10.6**: 5
 - elevation pressure (p_z), defined, **10.6**: 4
 - gauge pressure (p_g), defined, **10.6**: 4
 - hydrostatic test, on components or assembled pumps, **10.6**: 11
 - hydrostatic test, parameters, **10.6**: 11
 - hydrostatic test, procedure, **10.6**: 11
 - instrumentation, **10.6**: 12
 - instrumentation, acceptable fluctuation and accuracy, **10.6**: 13, 13t.
 - instrumentation, calibration intervals, **10.6**: 12, 13t.
 - instrumentation, for air consumption measurement, **10.6**: 14, 15
 - instrumentation, for pressure measurement, **10.6**: 14, 15f.
 - instrumentation, for rate of flow (capacity) measurement, **10.6**: 16
 - instrumentation, for speed (cycle rate) measurement, **10.6**: 15
 - instrumentation, for temperature measurement, **10.6**: 16
 - instrumentation, pressure tap location, **10.6**: 14
 - maximum allowable air inlet pressure, defined, **10.6**: 4
 - maximum allowable discharge pressure, defined, **10.6**: 4
 - maximum allowable suction pressure ($p_{s\ max}$), defined, **10.6**: 5
 - mechanical test, **10.6**: 6
 - net positive inlet pressure available (NPIPA), definition and equation, **10.6**: 5
 - net positive inlet pressure required (NPIPR) test, **10.6**: 7f., 8, 8f., 9
 - net positive inlet pressure required (NPIPR), defined, **10.6**: 6
 - net positive suction head available (NPSHA), definition and equation, **10.6**: 5
 - net positive suction head required (NPSHR) test, **10.6**: 7f., 8, 8f., 9
 - net positive suction head required (NPSHR), defined, **10.6**: 6
 - net positive suction head test, **10.6**: 7, 7f., 8
 - noise testing, **10.6**: 12
 - normal cubic meter per minute, **10.6**: 6
 - performance tests, **10.6**: 6, 7, 7f., 8, 8f.
 - pressure (p), defined, **10.6**: 4
 - pressure (p), measurement of, **10.6**: 14, 15f.
 - pressure (p), tap location, **10.6**: 14
 - priming. see suction lift
 - rate of flow (capacity) (Q), defined, **10.6**: 3
 - rate of flow (capacity) (Q), measurement of, **10.6**: 16
 - rated condition point, **10.6**: 1
 - specific weight (γ) of water, defined, **10.6**: 3
 - speed (cycle rate) measurement, **10.6**: 15
 - standard cubic feet per minute (SCFM), defined, **10.6**: 6
 - stroke length (L), defined, **10.6**: 3
 - subscripts, **10.6**: 3t.
 - suction lift (priming), defined, **10.6**: 5
 - suction lift testing, **10.6**: 9, 10, 10f.
 - symbols, **10.6**: 2t.
 - temperature measurement, **10.6**: 16
 - test instrumentation. see instrumentation
 - total head (pH), definition and equation, **10.6**: 5
 - types of, **10.6**: 1
 - velocity pressure (p_v), definition and equation, **10.6**: 5
 - volume, standard units of, **10.6**: 3
 - wet suction lift, test methods, **10.6**: 10, 11
- Air-operated pumps, **10.1-10.5**: 1
 - acceleration head (h_{acc}), calculations, **10.1-10.5**: 9
 - acceleration head (h_{acc}), defined, **10.1-10.5**: 9
 - acceleration pressure (p_{acc}), calculations, **10.1-10.5**: 9
 - acceleration pressure (p_{acc}), defined, **10.1-10.5**: 9
 - air chamber, **10.1-10.5**: 2
 - air consumption, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 10
 - air distribution system, **10.1-10.5**: 2
 - ball check valves, **10.1-10.5**: 4 f.
 - bellows, **10.1-10.5**: 3
 - datum, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 6
 - cavitation, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 7
 - check valves, **10.1-10.5**: 4, 4 f.
 - colloidal liquids, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 11
 - compressed-air properties definitions, **10.1-10.5**: 10
 - condensation, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 10
 - cycle rate (n), defined, **10.1-10.5**: 4
 - cycle, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 4
 - datum, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 6
 - definitions, **10.1-10.5**: 4
 - design, **10.1-10.5**: 11-14
 - dew point, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 10
 - diaphragm with integral outer plate, **10.1-10.5**: 3 f., 3
 - diaphragm, **10.1-10.5**: 2
 - diaphragm, inner and outer plates, **10.1-10.5**: 3
 - dilatant liquids, defined, **10.1-10.5**: 11
 - discharge manifold, **10.1-10.5**: 3
 - discharge pressure (p_d), defined, **10.1-10.5**: 6
 - displacement per stroke (D), defined, **10.1-10.5**: 6
 - dlap check valves, **10.1-10.5**: 4 f.

Air-operated pumps — *Continued*

- dry suction lift, defined, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- duplex, **10.1-10.5: 2**
- effective diaphragm area (A_{EFF}), defined, **10.1-10.5: 4, 4 f.**
- elastomer shelf life, **10.1-10.5: 20**
- flooded suction, defined, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- friction loss pressure (p_f), defined, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- handling of hazardous liquids, **10.1-10.5: 11**
- handling of hot liquids, **10.1-10.5: 12**
- inlet air pressure (p_i), defined, **10.1-10.5: 6**
- inlet manifold, **10.1-10.5: 3**
- inspection, before installation, **10.1-10.5: 15**
- inspection, for maintenance, **10.1-10.5: 20**
- installation, **10.1-10.5: 14-16, 16 f., 17, 17f.**
- liquid chamber, **10.1-10.5: 3**
- liquid properties, **10.1-10.5: 11**
- liquids and slurries handled, **10.1-10.5: 11**
- maintenance, **10.1-10.5: 20, 21t., 22t.**
- maximum allowable air inlet pressure, defined, **10.1-10.5: 6**
- maximum allowable discharge pressure, defined, **10.1-10.5: 6**
- maximum allowable suction pressure ($p_{s\ max}$), defined, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- maximum cycle rate, defined, **10.1-10.5: 4**
- maximum operating temperature (t_{max}), defined, **10.1-10.5: 10**
- minimum operating temperature (t_{min}), defined, **10.1-10.5: 10**
- net positive inlet pressure available (NPIPA), defined, **10.1-10.5: 8**
- net positive inlet pressure required (NPIPR), defined, **10.1-10.5: 8**
- net positive suction head (NPSH) terminology, **10.1-10.5: 8**
- net positive suction head available (NPSHA), defined, **10.1-10.5: 8**
- net positive suction head required (NPSHR), defined, **10.1-10.5: 8**
- Newtonian liquids, defined, **10.1-10.5: 11**
- nomenclature, **10.1-10.5: 2**
- NPIPA. See net positive inlet pressure available
- NPIPR. See net positive inlet pressure required
- NPSH. See net positive suction head
- NPSHA. See net positive suction head available
- NPSHR. See net positive suction head required
- operation, **10.1-10.5: 17, 18 f., 19**
- pressures terminology, **10.1-10.5: 6**
- priming. see suction lift
- pulsation dampeners, **10.1-10.5: 10**
- pulsation dampeners, **10.1-10.5: 10**
- pumping of dry powders, **10.1-10.5: 12**
- rate of flow (capacity) (Q), defined, **10.1-10.5: 4**
- rate of flow terminology, **10.1-10.5: 4**
- relative humidity, defined, **10.1-10.5: 10**
- safety, **10.1-10.5: 19**
- saturation vapor pressure, defined, **10.1-10.5: 10**
- SCFM. see standard cubic feet per minute
- simplex, **10.1-10.5: 2**
- specific gravity, and effect on pump performance, **10.1-10.5: 14**
- standard cubic feet per minute (SCFM), defined, **10.1-10.5: 10**
- storage, **10.1-10.5: 20**
- stroke length (L), defined, **10.1-10.5: 4**
- submerged suction, defined, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- subscripts, **10.1-10.5: 4, 6 t.**
- suction conditions, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- suction lift (priming), defined, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- suction pressure (p_s), defined, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- symbols, **10.1-10.5: 4, 5 t.**
- temperature, **10.1-10.5: 10**
- terms, **10.1-10.5: 4, 5 t.**
- thixotropic liquids, defined, **10.1-10.5: 11**
- total differential pressure (pH), defined, **10.1-10.5: 7**
- total suction lift, defined, **10.1-10.5: 8**
- types, **10.1-10.5: 1, 1 f.**
- typical services, **10.1-10.5: 11**
- units, **10.1-10.5: 4, 5 t.**
- viscosity, **10.1-10.5: 11, 14**
- wet suction lift, **10.1-10.5: defined, 8**
- wetted path housings, **10.1-10.5: 3**
- Alarm limit, **9.6.5: 4**
- Alignment, **3.1-3.5: 58**
- Alkalinity, of water, **2.3: 79**
- Allowable bearing housing vibration pump types BB and OH, **9.6.4: 8 f.**
 - at speeds above 600 rpm, **9.6.4: 7, 8 f., 9 f.**
 - at speeds of 600 rpm and below, **9.6.4: 10 t.**
 - pump types VS1, VS2, VS3, VS4, VS5, VS6, VS7, VS8, **9.6.4: 8 f.**
 - slurry pump types, **9.6.4: 9 f.**
 - solids-handling pump types, **9.6.4: 9 f.**
- Allowable imbalance, **9.6.8: 32**
- Allowable operating range, defined, **1.1-1.2: 71, 2.1-2.2: 34, 12.1-12.6: 35**
- Allowable operating region (AOR), **9.6.3: 2**
 - and bearing life, **9.6.3: 3**
 - and dip (in head vs. rate-of-flow curve), **9.6.3: 6, 7f.**
 - and droop (in head vs. rate-of-flow curve), **9.6.3: 5–6, 6f.**
 - and factory test, **9.6.3: 2**
 - and hydraulic loads, **9.6.3: 3**
 - and internal mechanical contact, **9.6.3: 4**
 - and liquid velocity, **9.6.3: 5**
 - and noise, **9.6.3: 4**
 - and NPSH margin, **9.6.3: 5, 5f.**
 - and power limit, **9.6.3: 4**
 - and pump size, **9.6.3: 8**
 - and service life, **9.6.3: 2**
 - and shaft fatigue life, **9.6.3: 3**
 - and shaft seal life, **9.6.3: 4**
 - and suction recirculation, **9.6.3: 7–8, 8f.**

- Allowable operating region (AOR) — *Continued*
 and temperature rise, **9.6.3**: 4
 and thrust reversal, **9.6.3**: 4
 and vibration, **9.6.3**: 4
 defined, **9.6.3**: 2
 factors affecting, **9.6.3**: 2–8
- Alnico magnet, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 17
- Alnico, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10
- Aluminum, **9.1-9.5**: 21
 alloy 319, **9.1-9.5**: 21
 alloy 355, **9.1-9.5**: 21
 alloy 356, **9.1-9.5**: 21
 alloy 7075 (Al-Zn-Mg-Cu-Cr), **9.1-9.5**: 22
 alloy ASTM B211, alloy 2011, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 alloy ASTM B211, alloy 6061, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 alloy B750, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 alloy C-355-T6, **9.1-9.5**: 21
 alloy TP-220-T4, **9.1-9.5**: 21
 aluminum copper (Al/Cu) SAE AA2017, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 compatibility with other materials, **9.1-9.5**: 21
 tenzallo, **9.1-9.5**: 22
- American Bearing Manufacturers Association, **5.1-5.6**: 46
- American Petroleum Institute, **5.1-5.6**: 46
- American Society for Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), **50.7**: 3
- American Society for Testing and Materials, **5.1-5.6**: 48
- American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) standards, **9.8**: 51
- American Society of Mechanical Engineers, **5.1-5.6**: 46
- Amplification chart, **9.6.8**: 85f.
- Amplification factor, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Analyses beyond scope of document, **9.6.8**: 7
- Analysis complexity levels, **9.6.8**: 28t.
- Analysis level 3
 elements, **9.6.8**: 36
 limitations, **9.6.8**: 36
- Analysis level definitions, **9.6.8**: 33
 level 1, **9.6.8**: 33
 level 2, **9.6.8**: 34
 level 3, **9.6.8**: 36
- Analysis levels introduction, **9.6.8**: 27
See also Levels of analysis types, **9.6.8**: 27
- Analysis reporting format, **9.6.8**: 92
- Analysis, **40.6**: 11
 translation of the test results into data based on the specified speed of rotation (or frequency), **40.6**: 11
 translation of the test results to the rated speed of rotation, **40.6**: 11
- Angular momentum, **1.3**: 1
- Annular seal, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- ANSI/ASME B73.1 pump assessment of applied nozzle loads, **9.6.2**: 5
 composite pumps, **9.6.2**: 8
 Equation Sets 1-5, **9.6.2**: 5t.
 maximum forces and moments for use with Equation Set 1, **9.6.2**: 6t.
 maximum forces and moments for use with Equation Set 2, **9.6.2**: 7t.
 maximum forces and moments for use with Equation Set 3, **9.6.2**: 8t.
 maximum forces and moments for use with Equation Set 4, **9.6.2**: 8t.
 metallic pump adjustment of maximum forces and moments, **9.6.2**: 5
 metallic pump combined force/moment capability, **9.6.2**: 5
 metallic pump load capability, **9.6.2**: 5
 metallic pump temperature and material adjustment values, **9.6.2**: 10t.
 metallic pumps, **9.6.2**: 5
- ANSI/ASME B73.1 pumps
 example assessments of applied nozzle loads (1.5x1-8 CF8M Type 316, **9.6.2**: Class 150 flanges, at 100 °F, fully grouted metal baseplate), **9.6.2**: 24
 example assessments of applied nozzle loads (1.5x1-8, material with a modulus of elasticity greater than 1.0 x 10⁶, at 110 °F, fully grouted nonmetal baseplate), **9.6.2**: 29
 example assessments of applied nozzle loads (3x1.5-13 Alloy 20, Class 300 flanges, at 400 °F, fully grouted metal baseplate), **9.6.2**: 27
- ANSI/ASME B73.1 *Specification for Horizontal End Suction Centrifugal Pumps for Chemical Process*, **50.7**: 1, 3, 8
- ANSI/ASME B73.2 pumps
 example assessments of applied nozzle loads (4030/28, 2-in discharge, 13-in nominal impeller, Alloy 20, Class 300 flanges, at 400 °F), **9.6.2**: 33
 example assessments of applied nozzle loads (size 2015/17, 1.5-in discharge, 8-in nominal impeller, CF8M Type 316, Class 150 flanges, at 100 °F), **9.6.2**: 32
- ANSI/ASME B73.2 *Specification for Vertical In-Line Centrifugal Pumps for Chemical Process*, **50.7**: 1, 3, 8
- ANSI/ASME B73.3 sealless pump assessment of applied nozzle loads, **9.6.2**: 8
- ANSI/HI 1.6 Centrifugal Pump Tests, **14.6**: 1
- ANSI/HI 11.6 Submersible Pump Tests, **14.6**: 1
- ANSI/HI 2.6 Vertical Pump Tests, **14.6**: 1
- ANSI/HI 5.1–5.6 Sealless Rotodynamic Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Design, Application, Operation, and Test, **14.6**: 1
- Anti-reverse rotation devices, **2.3**: 27
- API 610 Standard for Centrifugal Pumps for Petroleum, Petrochemical and Natural Gas Industries, **50.7**: 1, 3, 8
 additional data to support data sheet, **50.7**: 14
 and HI-EDE implementation, **50.7**: 20
 data sheet, **50.7**: 8, 9 f.
See also R/D/S/A compliance
- API double suction pumps, **20.3**: 5 t.
- API end suction pumps, **20.3**: 5 t.

- API Plan 02, **12.1-12.6:** 84
- API Plan 11, **12.1-12.6:** 84
- API Plan 32, **12.1-12.6:** 84
- API Plan 52, **12.1-12.6:** 84
- API Plan 53, **12.1-12.6:** 84
- API Plan 54, **12.1-12.6:** 84
- API Plan 62, **12.1-12.6:** 85
- API Standard 610 (impellers), **1.3:** 35
- API-type, single-stage, end suction process pump, **20.3:** 3
- Apparent viscosity, **6.1-6.5:** 34
- Apparent viscosity, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 37, **12.1-12.6:** 38
- Appeals, **40.7:** 8
- Application considerations, **4.1-4.6:** 14
 - bearings, **4.1-4.6:** 18
 - containment shell thickness and materials, **4.1-4.6:** 18
 - coupling selection, **4.1-4.6:** 15
 - entrained air or gas, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - high viscosity, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - liquid classification, **4.1-4.6:** 17
 - liquid properties, **4.1-4.6:** 15
 - liquid vapor pressure, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - low viscosity, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - lubricating liquid, **4.1-4.6:** 17
 - magnets, **4.1-4.6:** 15, **4.1-4.6:** 18
 - materials, **4.1-4.6:** 18
 - mechanical safety, **4.1-4.6:** 19
 - monitoring devices, **4.1-4.6:** 19
 - nonlubricating liquid, **4.1-4.6:** 17
 - off-design rating procedures, **4.1-4.6:** 17
 - particles, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - pump, **4.1-4.6:** 18
 - safety, **4.1-4.6:** 18
 - shear sensitivity, **4.1-4.6:** 17
 - specific gravity, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - specific heat, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - stripping applications, **4.1-4.6:** 17
 - temperature, **4.1-4.6:** 15
 - variable viscosity, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - viscosity, **4.1-4.6:** 15
- Application guidelines, **5.1-5.6:** 33, **8.1-8.5:** 13
 - canned motor or magnet component temperature, **5.1-5.6:** 38
 - containment expectations, **5.1-5.6:** 33
 - pump selection, **5.1-5.6:** 36
 - safety considerations, **5.1-5.6:** 34
 - sealless pump advantages, **5.1-5.6:** 33
 - sealless pump limitations, **5.1-5.6:** 33
 - unit design and circulation plan selection and application, **5.1-5.6:** 33
 - uses of sealless pumps, **5.1-5.6:** 33
- Applications, **1.3:** 113, **12.1-12.6:** 44–45
 - booster service, **1.3:** 114
 - dry pit (nonclog) pumps, **1.3:** 117, 118f.
 - pump as turbine (PAT), **1.3:** 114, 115f., 117
 - self-priming pumps, **1.3:** 119, 120f., 121f., 123
 - transfer pumping, **1.3:** 113
 - two-phase pumping (liquid and gas), **1.3:** 122, 122f., 123f., 124f., 125f.
 - type OH pumps as self-priming pumps, **1.3:** 120
- Approach pipes, **9.8:** 77
 - maximum allowable flow rates, **9.8:** 78t., 79t.
 - schematic diagram of, **9.8:** 77f.
- Approval process
 - applicable standards, **40.7:** 3
 - application approved, **40.7:** 3
 - application for approval, **40.7:** 3
 - application rejected, **40.7:** 3
 - approval decision, **40.7:** 5
 - approval denied, **40.7:** 5
 - approval granted upon remedy of nonconformities, **40.7:** 5
 - audit flowchart, **40.7:** 17 f.
 - confidentiality, **40.7:** 4
 - demonstrations of pump testing procedures, **40.7:** 5
 - documents needed for audit, **40.7:** 16
 - general, **40.7:** 3
 - languages used, **40.7:** 4
 - on-site assessment, **40.7:** 4
 - opening meeting, **40.7:** 4
 - records review, **40.7:** 5
 - renewal of approval, **40.7:** 6
 - role of Auditor, **40.7:** 4
 - staff interviews, **40.7:** 5
- Aqueducts, **9.8:** 108
- ASME B73 (baseplates), **1.3:** 101, 101f.
- ASME B73 pumps, **20.3:** 5 t.
- ASME B73.1 (impellers), **1.3:** 35
- Asynchronous, defined, **9.6.8:** 58
- ATEX Certification, **1.4:** 8, **2.4:** 8
- Atmospheric head (h_{atm}),
 - defined, **2.1-2.2:** 33, 70, **11.6:** 10, **12.1-12.6:** 35
- Attainable efficiency example (metric units)
- Attainable efficiency example (US customary units) single-stage, end suction, solids-handling submersible sewage type pump, **20.3:** 4
- Audit flowchart, **40.7:** 17 f.
- Audit requirements changes to, **40.7:** 7 t.
- Auditor, defined, **40.7:** 1
- Austenitic stainless steels, **12.1-12.6:** 67
- Auxiliary drive (steam) valve, **8.1-8.5:** 6
- Auxiliary storage, **9.8:** 76–77
- Average particle size (d₅₀), **12.1-12.6:** 39t.
 - defined, **12.1-12.6:** 39
- Axial flow impeller, **2.1-2.2:** 19, **2.3:** 6, 6 f., 9
- Axial flow pumps, **1.1-1.2:** 10 f., 11, 11 f.
- Axial load, **1.3:** 34
- Axial load, defined, **5.1-5.6:** 14
- Axial piston pumps, **3.1-3.5:** 1f., 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f., 14f.
 - description, **3.1-3.5:** 7
 - fixed displacement, **3.1-3.5:** 8
 - range chart, **3.1-3.5:** 8
 - variable displacement, **3.1-3.5:** 8
- Axial split case pumps (single-stage double suction and two-stage single suction)

- example assessments of applied nozzle loads (4-in discharge, 7/8-in hold-down bolts, cast-iron class 125 flanges), **9.6.2:** 34
- Axial thrust
 - calculation for axial flow pump impellers, **1.3:** 31
 - calculation for enclosed impeller with plain back shroud, **1.3:** 23f., 23, 26
 - calculation for impeller with back ring, **1.3:** 25f., 25, 27
 - calculation for impellers, **1.3:** 21
 - calculation for semi-open impellers, **1.3:** 29, 29f.
 - calculation of axial force due to momentum change, **1.3:** 31
 - on enclosed impellers, **1.3:** 21, 21f.
- Axial thrust factor (K_A), **1.3:** 22, 22f.
- Axial thrust, **2.3:** 8, 9 f.
 - calculating by manufacturer's thrust factor method, **2.3:** 14
 - calculating for impellers with back rings (at BEP), **2.3:** 13
 - calculating for impellers with no back rings (at BEP), **2.3:** 11, 12 f.
 - calculating, **2.3:** 9
 - shaft upthrust force from enclosed suction can pumps, **2.3:** 10 f., 10
 - shaft upthrust force from shaft sleeves through packing or mechanical seals, **2.3:** 10, 11 f.
 - shaft upthrust force from shaft sleeves through pressure breakdown bushings, **2.3:** 10, 11 f.
 - static component of, **2.3:** 10
 - terminology, **2.3:** 8
 - versus rate of flow, **2.3:** 14, 15 f.
- Axially split one- and two-stage pumps (BB1)
 - assessment of applied loads, **9.6.2:** 17
 - casing hold-down bolts, **9.6.2:** 17
 - coordinate system, **9.6.2:** 16f.
 - criteria for loading allowances, **9.6.2:** 16
 - definitions, **9.6.2:** 15
 - driver/pump coupling arrangement, **9.6.2:** 16
 - effect of nozzle loading on hold-down bolts, **9.6.2:** 17
 - limiting factors, **9.6.2:** 16
 - maximum forces and moments to assess applied loads based on hold-down bolts, **9.6.2:** 18t.
 - maximum forces and moments to assess applied loads based on nozzle stress, **9.6.2:** 18t.
 - scope, **9.6.2:** 15
- b_2 . See Impeller width at discharge (b_2) Barrier fluid, **1.3:** 63
- Back pull-out assembly, defined, **1.1-1.2:** 42, 43 f.
- Backpressure valves, **7.8:** 12
- Balance machines, **9.6.4:** 13
 - weight rating, **9.6.4:** 14
- Balancing
 - and inherent balance, **9.6.4:** 15
 - and keys and keyways in balancing arbors, **9.6.4:** 16
 - and removal or addition of material, **9.6.4:** 17
 - and runout in balancer drive or balancing arbor, **9.6.4:** 15
- excessive looseness between impeller hub and balancing arbor, **9.6.4:** 16
- Bare rotor
 - defined, **2.1-2.2:** 43
 - terms, **2.1-2.2:** 41
- Bare trenches, performance of, **9.8:** 81, 82f.
- Barometric pressure, **6.1-6.5:** 28t., 28, **8.1-8.5:** 11 and altitude, **8.1-8.5:** 11, 12t.
- Barrel design. See Pump type BB4
- Barrel or can (line shaft) pumps, **2.1-2.2:** 11
- Barrier fluid flow leakage monitoring, **9.6.9:** 10, 10t.
- Barrier fluid, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 38
- Baseline measurements, **9.6.5:** 3
- Baseline, **9.6.9:** 27
- Baseline, defined, **9.6.5:** 55
- Baseplates, **1.3:** 94
 - selection parameters, **1.3:** 95t.
 - alignment blocks or guides for thermal expansion of the pump case, **1.3:** 108
 - coupling alignment, **1.3:** 107
 - drip rims, **1.3:** 108
 - epoxy grouting, **1.3:** 108
 - fasteners, **1.3:** 108
 - formed polymer, **1.3:** 102, 103f.
 - freestanding, **1.3:** 99, 100f.
 - functional requirements, **1.3:** 95, 95t.
 - grout holes, **1.3:** 109
 - grouted, **1.3:** 97, 97f., 98f.
 - jacking pads and screws, **1.3:** 108
 - leveling screws, **1.3:** 108
 - lifting requirements, **1.3:** 108
 - nongrout, **1.3:** 97, 98f.
 - offshore skid type, **1.3:** 104, 105f.
 - oil pipeline skid type, **1.3:** 104, 105f.
 - pedestal, **1.3:** 103, 104f.
 - polymer, **1.3:** 102
 - pregouted, **1.3:** 98, 99f.
 - shims and fasteners, **1.3:** 108
 - slide-bearing, **1.3:** 100, 100f.
 - sloped deck plates, **1.3:** 108
 - soleplates, **1.3:** 99, 100f.
 - solid polymer concrete, **1.3:** 103, 103f.
 - standards, **1.3:** 101, 101f., 102f.
 - stress and rigidity requirements, **1.3:** 107
 - three-point mount, **1.3:** 106, 106f.
 - tolerancing, **1.3:** 107
 - types, **1.3:** 96
- BB1-BB5. See Pump type BB1-Pump type BB5
- Bearing arrangements, **1.3:** 31
- Bearing bushings, **2.3:** 16
 - in adapters, **2.3:** 64
 - intermediate, **2.3:** 64
 - losses due to viscosity, **2.3:** 50
- Bearing housing
 - and temperature monitoring, **9.6.9:** 7
 - and vibration monitoring, **9.6.9:** 12
- Bearing housing closures, **2.3:** 26

- Bearing housings, **2.3**: 64, 73
 - acceleration in vibration monitoring, **9.6.5**: 15
 - vibration control limits, **9.6.5**: 15–16
 - vibration monitoring, **9.6.5**: 15, 16
- Bearing isolators, **2.3**: 26
- Bearing materials, **4.1-4.6**: 18
- Bearing wear monitoring, **9.6.5**: 20
 - by acoustic sensors, **9.6.5**: 21
 - by contact or continuity switches, **9.6.5**: 21
 - by power monitors, **9.6.5**: 21
 - by proximity sensing devices, **9.6.5**: 21
 - by temperature probes, **9.6.5**: 21
 - by vibration sensors, **9.6.5**: 21
 - carbon bearings, **9.6.5**: 21
 - component contact detection, **9.6.5**: 21
 - control limits, **9.6.5**: 22
 - detection methods, **9.6.5**: 21
 - of plain bearings in sealless pumps, **9.6.5**: 20
 - progressive monitoring, **9.6.5**: 21
 - silicon carbide bearings, **9.6.5**: 21
- Bearing whip, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Bearing whirl, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Bearing, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
- Bearings, **1.3**: 43, **12.1-12.6**: 69–71
 - adjusted rating life, L_{na} , **1.3**: 47, 50, 50t.
 - air entrainment in lubricants, **1.3**: 56
 - and contact seals, **12.1-12.6**: 69
 - and labyrinth seals, **12.1-12.6**: 69, 70f.
 - and lip seals, **12.1-12.6**: 69, 69f.
 - axial adjustment of housing, **12.1-12.6**: 92
 - axial load, F_a , **1.3**: 47
 - ball bearings, **1.3**: 46f.
 - basic dynamic radial load rating, C_r , **1.3**: 47
 - basic rating life, L_{10} , **1.3**: 47, 49
 - contamination factor, η_c , **1.3**: 51, 52t.
 - contamination prevention in lubricants, **1.3**: 56
 - cylindrical-type radial journal (sleeve) bearings, **1.3**: 45f.
 - degradation improvement in lubricants, **1.3**: 57
 - dynamic equivalent radial load, P_r , **1.3**: 47
 - factors, **1.3**: 48
 - failure mode indicated by temperature monitoring, **9.6.9**: 7
 - failure mode indicated by vibration monitoring, **9.6.9**: 12
 - fatigue life, **12.1-12.6**: 71, 71t.
 - fatigue limit load, C_u , **1.3**: 51
 - friction losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
 - grease lubrication, **1.3**: 53
 - heat and oil oxidation, **1.3**: 56
 - heat stabilization temperature, **1.3**: 53
 - high level of lubricant, **1.3**: 55
 - hydrodynamic radial, **9.6.9**: 7
 - isolators, **12.1-12.6**: 70, 70f.
 - life (horizontal pumps), **1.3**: 46
 - life modification factor, a_{xyz} , **1.3**: 49
 - life, **1.3**: 48
 - liquid film, temperature monitoring, **9.6.5**: 7
 - low level of lubricant, **1.3**: 55
 - lubrication methods, **1.3**: 43
 - lubrication, **1.3**: 53
 - lubrication, **2.3**: 19
 - material adjustment factor, a_2 , **1.3**: 48
 - minimum load, **1.3**: 46
 - modified rating life, L_{nm} , **1.3**: 48, 50
 - moisture elimination in lubricants, **1.3**: 57
 - oil lubrication, **1.3**: 54
 - operating conditions adjustment factor, a_3 , **1.3**: 48
 - outboard (antifriction), **2.3**: 73
 - outboard, **2.3**: 64
 - particle contamination of lubricants, **1.3**: 56
 - pivot-shoe thrust bearings, **1.3**: 45, 45f.
 - product lubrication, **1.3**: 55
 - quality of lubrication, **1.3**: 55
 - quality of oil, **1.3**: 55
 - quantity improvement of lubricants, **1.3**: 56
 - radial load, F_r , **1.3**: 47
 - reliability adjustment factor, a_1 , **1.3**: 48
 - reliability, **1.3**: 47
 - retainer, **2.3**: 64
 - roller bearings, **1.3**: 46f.
 - rolling element bearing failure, **9.6.9**: 5, 15t.
 - rolling element bearings, **1.3**: 44, 44t.
 - rolling element defects, **9.6.9**: 12
 - rolling element temperature monitoring, **9.6.9**: 7
 - rolling element, defects in vibration monitoring, **9.6.5**: 15
 - sleeve bearing failure, **9.6.9**: 5
 - sleeve bearing temperature monitoring, **9.6.9**: 7
 - sleeve bearings, **1.3**: 44, 45f.
 - spacing, **2.3**: 19
 - temperature, **1.3**: 53
 - thrust, **9.6.9**: 7
 - type BB4 multistage radial split single casing pump, **1.3**: 46f.
 - water contamination of lubricants, **1.3**: 56
- Bell inlet velocity, **9.8**: 42
- Bell intake shape, **9.8**: 93, 94f.
- BEP rate of flow $[Q_{opt}]$, defined, **1.1-1.2**: 68, **2.1-2.2**: 30
- BEP. See Best efficiency point
- Best efficiency point (BEP) $[Q_{opt}]$, **1.3**: 1, 15, **9.6.3**: 1, **9.6.8**: 58, **12.1-12.6**: 64, 64t.
 - axial load for multistage pumps, **1.3**: 34
 - defined, **1.1-1.2**: 71, **2.1-2.2**: 34, **2.3**: 41, **11.6**: 7, **12.1-12.6**: 35
 - operation above, **2.3**: 41
 - operation below, **2.3**: 41
 - values, **20.3**: 1
- Best efficiency point (BEP), and NPSH margin, **9.6.1**: 4, 4f.
- Between-bearings (BB) type, **1.3**: 1, 33, 33f., 110, 112f.
 - double suction pumps, **1.3**: 33, 34f.
 - multistage pumps, **1.3**: 34, 34f.
 - operation away from, **1.3**: 71

- Between-bearings (BB) type — *Continued*
 - radial load for multistage pumps, **1.3**: 34
 - shaft support for multistage pumps, **1.3**: 34
- Between bearings, multistage, axially split pump, **1.1-1.2**: 31 f.
- Between bearings, multistage, radially split, double casing pump, **1.1-1.2**: 33 f.
- Between bearings, multistage, radially split, single casing pump, **1.1-1.2**: 32 f.
- Between bearings, single stage, axially split pump, **1.1-1.2**: 29 f.
- Between bearings, single stage, radially split pump, **1.1-1.2**: 30 f.
- Between-bearing impeller pumps icons, **1.1-1.2**: 78 f.–79 f.
- Between-bearing pump defined, **9.6.8**: 27
- Bibliography, **9.1-9.5**: 44, **9.6.7**: 27
- Body, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
- Bolted couplings, **2.3**: 29
- Boltproof load, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 18
- Bowl assembly efficiency (η_{ba}), defined, **2.1-2.2**: 37
- Bowl assembly input power (P_{ba}), defined, **2.1-2.2**: 36
- Bowl assembly total head (H_{ba}), defined, **2.1-2.2**: 33, **40.6**: 17
- Bowl assembly total head determination for vertically suspended pumps, **14.6**: 33 f. , **40.6**: 19 f. with a closed suction, **14.6**: 37 f. , **40.6**: 20 f.
- Bowl efficiency
 - and losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
- Brake horsepower. See Pump input power
- Bromobutyl, **12.1-12.6**: 68
- Bubble test, **4.1-4.6**: 27
- Buffer fluid, **1.3**: 63, **12.1-12.6**: 79 defined, **12.1-12.6**: 38
- Building services (HVAC), **9.6.1**: 12
- Bull ring packing, **6.1-6.5**: 77f., 77
- Butyl, **12.1-12.6**: 68
- Bypass valves, **9.6.9**: 8
- Calculations, **7.6**: 13
 - of NPSHA on dry-pit pump, **11.6**: 52
 - of NPSHA on wet-pit pump, **11.6**: 51
 - of performance based on change in pump impeller diameter, **11.6**: 50
 - of performance based on change in pump speed, **11.6**: 49
 - of performance tolerance bands for pump acceptance according to grade 1E and 2B, **11.6**: 53
- Calibration columns, **7.8**: 15
- Campbell diagram, **9.6.8**: 30, 33 defined, **9.6.8**: 58
 - for lateral critical speeds, **9.6.8**: 31f.
 - for torsional critical speeds, **9.6.8**: 34f.
 - for variable frequency unit, **9.6.8**: 85f.
- Can vertical turbine pump intakes, **9.8**: 26
 - closed bottom can, **9.8**: 28, 29f.
 - design considerations, **9.8**: 26
 - open bottom can intakes, **9.8**: 26, 27f.
- Canals, **9.8**: 108
- Canned motor pump cooling and lubrication, **5.1-5.6**: 1
 - end suction, **5.1-5.6**: 2
 - end suction, overhung impeller, **5.1-5.6**: 4f.
 - in-line, **5.1-5.6**: 2
 - motor and pump separated by thermal barrier (plan 123), **5.1-5.6**: 55f.
 - motor insulation temperature limits, **5.1-5.6**: 38t.
 - multistage end suction, **5.1-5.6**: 54
 - multistage, **5.1-5.6**: 57f.
 - retrofit end suction design, **5.1-5.6**: 54
 - retrofit with external circulation, **5.1-5.6**: 56f.
 - reverse circulation (plan 113), **5.1-5.6**: 55f.
 - reverse circulation end suction (circulation plan 113) design, **5.1-5.6**: 54
 - self-priming end suction, **5.1-5.6**: 54
 - self-priming, **5.1-5.6**: 57f.
 - separated pump and motor end suction (circulation plan 123) design, **5.1-5.6**: 54
 - vertical in-line, **5.1-5.6**: 5f.
 - vertical submerged, **5.1-5.6**: 2, 6f.
- Cantilever shaft design sump pump (VS5), **2.1-2.2**: 10 f.
- Cantilevered wet pit, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 3
- Canvas packing, **8.1-8.5**: 20
- Capability table (metric), **3.1-3.5**: 3t.
- Capability table (US customary units), **3.1-3.5**: 4t.
- Capability tables, **3.1-3.5**: 2
- Capacity
 - actual rate of flow (Q_A), defined, **7.6**: 5
 - adjustment, defined, **7.6**: 4
 - design rate of flow (Q_D), defined, **7.6**: 5
 - rate of flow (Q), defined, **7.6**: 4, **7.8**: 3
 - Carboxylated nitrile, **12.1-12.6**: 68
- Casing
 - hydrostatic test pressure, **5.1-5.6**: 22
 - suction and discharge flange ratings, **5.1-5.6**: 22
 - vent and drain boss sizing, **5.1-5.6**: 22
- Casing position, **1.1-1.2**: 44, 44 f.
- Casings, **1.3**: 1, 7, **2.3**: 65, 73
 - multistage arrangements, **1.3**: 8
 - back-to-back arrangement, **1.3**: 11, 11f.
 - circular (concentric), **1.3**: 8, 8f.
 - diffuser, **1.3**: 8, 8f.
 - double volute, **1.3**: 7, 7f.
 - single volute, **1.3**: 7, 7f.
 - stacked in-line arrangement, **1.3**: 10, 10f.
 - type BB3 between-bearings axial split volute, **1.3**: 9, 9f.
 - type BB4 between-bearings radial split single, **1.3**: 9, 9f.
 - type BB5 between-bearings radial split double (diffusers), **1.3**: 10
 - type BB5 between-bearings radial split double (volute pumps), **1.3**: 10, 10f.
- Catch tank leakage monitoring, **9.6.9**: 10, 10t.
- Cause, **9.6.9**: 27
- Cause, defined, **9.6.5**: 55
- Cavitation, **3.1-3.5**: 49
 - damage from, **9.6.1**: 10

- Cavitation — *Continued*
in centrifugal pumps, **9.6.1**: 14
- Cavitation erosion resistance, **9.1-9.5**: 26
elastomers, **9.1-9.5**: 27
engineered plastics, **9.1-9.5**: 27
general ranking of common cast metals, **9.1-9.5**: 27 f.
general ranking of, **9.1-9.5**: 26
hard-faced materials, **9.1-9.5**: 27
- Ceramic bearings, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Ceramics, **4.1-4.6**: 10
coating application, **9.1-9.5**: 25
properties, **9.1-9.5**: 25
- Certificate of Approval, **40.7**: 12
example, **40.7**: 12 f.
- Certification reports, DOE, **40.6**: 21
- Certification section, **1.4**: 39, **2.4**: 43
purpose, **2.4**: 43
- Certified curve, **6.6**: 18
- CFD. *See* Computational fluid dynamics
- C-frame adapter, **1.1-1.2**: 46 f., 46
See also Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, foot mounted ANSI B73.1 pump
- Changes to scope of approval and additional pump test laboratories, **40.7**: 6
- Character string fields, **50.7**: 12
- Characteristics of head measurement, **40.6**: 14
- Chart of correction factors for C_{η} , **9.6.7**: 10f.
for CQ and CH, **9.6.7**: 9f.
- Check valves, **7.8.11.2**: 12 defined, **7.8**: 2
- Checklist to facilitate use of guideline, **9.6.8**: 5f.
- Chemical packings, **8.1-8.5**: 20
- Chemical process pumps, **9.6.1**: 9
- Chlorides (in water), **2.3**: 79
- Chlorobutyl, **12.1-12.6**: 68
- Chromium-molybdenum iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
- Chromium-nickel (NiHard) iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
- CIMA. *See* Construction Industry Manufacturers Association
- Circular plan wet pit
accessories, **9.8**: 36
cleaning procedure and low liquid level, **9.8**: 37
floor clearance, **9.8**: 37–39
minimized horizontal floor area and, **9.8**: 37f.–39f.
wet-pit design, **9.8**: 36
- Circular pump stations (clear liquids), **9.8**: 18
designs of, **9.8**: 18, 19f.
recommendations for dimensioning, **9.8**: 20
- Circulating/cooling water pumps, **9.6.1**: 10
- Circulation piping plans for canned motor and magnetic drive pumps, **5.1-5.6**: 26f.
- Circulation plans
and conditions to avoid, **5.1-5.6**: 25
clean liquid, high temperature, nonvolatile, **5.1-5.6**: 29f.
clean liquid, nonvolatile, moderate temperature, **5.1-5.6**: 26f.
clean liquid, volatile, moderate temperature, **5.1-5.6**: 28f.
clean liquids, **5.1-5.6**: 36
dirty liquid, **5.1-5.6**: 27f.
dirty liquids, **5.1-5.6**: 36
external flush, **5.1-5.6**: 36
high temperature, **5.1-5.6**: 36
high viscosity, **5.1-5.6**: 36
liquids that solidify, **5.1-5.6**: 36
selection, **5.1-5.6**: 35
volatile liquids, **5.1-5.6**: 36
- Circulator pump type icons, **1.1-1.2**: 81
- Circumferential piston pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 1f., 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f., 11, 14f.
applications, **3.1-3.5**: 11
description, **3.1-3.5**: 11
range chart, **3.1-3.5**: 11f.
- Classic instability, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Classification by configuration
discharge, above- and below-floor discharge, **2.1-2.2**: 11
drivers, **2.1-2.2**: 11
- Classification by impeller design, **2.1-2.2**: 16
- Cleaning applications, **12.1-12.6**: 45
- Clear liquid, intake structures for, **9.8**: 1
can vertical turbine pump intakes, **9.8**: 26–29, 27f., 29f.
circular pump stations, **9.8**: 18–20, 19f.
formed suction intakes, **9.8**: 16–18, 17f.
rectangular intakes, **9.8**: 10–16, 13f.–14f., 15t.–16t.
tanks, pump suction, **9.8**: 22–25, 24f., 25f.
trench-type intakes, **9.8**: 21–22, 21f.
unconfined intakes, **9.8**: 30–32, 31f.
- Close coupled, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 7, **5.1-5.6**: 17
- Close-coupled horizontal in-line, **1.1-1.2**: 39 f.
- Close-coupled pumps, **1.1-1.2**: 1
- Close-coupled sealless with canned motor, **1.1-1.2**: 38 f.
- Close-coupled, vane-type, magnetic drive pumps, **4.1-4.6**: 1, 2f.
- Close-coupled, gear-type, magnetic drive pump, **4.1-4.6**: 5f.
- Closed bottom can, **9.8**: 28, 29f.
- Closed conduit approach, **9.8**: 62, 65f.
- CMP. *See* Canned motor pump
- Coatings, **9.1-9.5**: 22
- Coercive force, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 7
- Color (in water), **2.3**: 79
- Column hydraulic loss due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
- Column increasers and reducers losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
- Columns, **2.3**: 65, 73
- Commissioning, **12.1-12.6**: 92
- Commissioning, start-up, operation, and shut-down section, **1.4**: 27, **2.4**: 29
across-the-line start, **2.4**: 33
adequate submergence, **2.4**: 30
anti-reverse rotation devices, **2.4**: 29
back-flushing to remove debris, **2.4**: 30
bearing temperature, **1.4**: 31, **2.4**: 36

- Commissioning, start-up, operation, and shut-down section — *Continued*
- closed valve warning, **2.4**: 33
 - condition monitoring, **1.4**: 30, **2.4**: 35
 - drive system settings, **1.4**: 29, **2.4**: 33
 - driver inspection, **1.4**: 29
 - guarding, **1.4**: 27, **2.4**: 30
 - hydraulic resonance in piping, **1.4**: 31, **2.4**: 36
 - hydraulic resonance, solutions, **1.4**: 31, **2.4**: 36
 - lube filtration, **2.4**: 33
 - lubrication system settings, **1.4**: 29, **2.4**: 32
 - lubrication, **1.4**: 27, **2.4**: 29
 - mechanical seals, **1.4**: 28, **2.4**: 31
 - minimum continuous flow, **1.4**: 29, **2.4**: 32
 - minimum thermal flow, **1.4**: 29, **2.4**: 32
 - noise in pumping machinery, **1.4**: 30, **2.4**: 35
 - noise prevention, **1.4**: 31, **2.4**: 35
 - noise transmittal methods, **1.4**: 30, **2.4**: 35
 - operation at reduced flow, **2.4**: 35
 - packed stuffing box, **1.4**: 28, **2.4**: 31
 - parallel and series operation, **1.4**: 30, **2.4**: 34
 - performance testing and verification, **1.4**: 31, **2.4**: 36
 - position of discharge valve on starting, **1.4**: 29
 - primary and secondary driver inspection, **1.4**: 29, **2.4**: 32
 - priming and filling, **1.4**: 27
 - priming by ejector or exhauster, **1.4**: 27, **2.4**: 30
 - priming by vacuum pumps, **1.4**: 28, **2.4**: 31
 - pump bearings, **2.4**: 32
 - pumps, **2.4**: 32
 - reduced flow/minimum flow discharge bypass, **1.4**: 30
 - reduced voltage start, **2.4**: 33
 - rotation, **1.4**: 27, **2.4**: 29
 - shaft sealing settings and adjustments, **1.4**: 28, **2.4**: 31
 - start-up considerations, **1.4**: 27, **2.4**: 30
 - start-up, operation, and shut-down, **1.4**: 29, **2.4**: 32
 - system flushing, **1.4**: 27, **2.4**: 30
 - valve setting at start-up, **1.4**: 29, **2.4**: 34
 - valve settings and operation (timing) , **1.4**: 29, **2.4**: 33
 - vent line, **2.4**: 30
 - vibration (alarms and trip points), **1.4**: 30), **2.4**: 35
 - water (hydraulic) hammer, **1.4**: 30, **2.4**: 34
- Common polymer materials of construction for various liquids
- adhesives and sealants, **9.1-9.5**: 26
 - carbon and graphite, **9.1-9.5**: 26
 - ceramics, **9.1-9.5**: 25
 - elastomeric polymers, **9.1-9.5**: 24
 - fabrics, **9.1-9.5**: 26
 - leather, **9.1-9.5**: 26
 - other nonmetals, **9.1-9.5**: 25
 - reinforced fibers, **9.1-9.5**: 26
 - rigid polymers and composites, **9.1-9.5**: 24
 - tensile strength and modulus of elasticity, **9.1-9.5**: 24
 - thermoplastics, **9.1-9.5**: 25
 - thermosetting polymers, **9.1-9.5**: 24
 - types, **9.1-9.5**: 24
- Comparison of equivalent nomenclature, **40.6**: 30 t.
 - Compliance levels, **50.7**: 1, 11, 16, 17 t.
 - R compliance, **50.7**: 15, 17t.
 - R/D compliance, **50.7**: 15, 17 t.
 - R/D/S compliance, **50.7**: 15, 17t.
 - R/D/S/A compliance, **50.7**: 16, 17t.
 - relationship among, **50.7**: 16, 16f.
 - Computational fluid dynamics (CFD)), **9.6.7**: 1
 - closed conduit approach, **9.8**: 62, 65f.
 - Concentrated flows, expanding, **9.8**: 62
 - free surface approach, **9.8**: 62, 63f.-65f.
 - in pump suction hydraulics, **9.8**: 55
 - simulation methods, **9.8**: 55
 - through dual flow screen, **9.8**: 64f.
 - Computer discs and tape, cautions regarding, **4.1-4.6**: 23
 - Computers, caution regarding, **4.1-4.6**: 23
 - Concentration correction factor (C_{cv}), **12.1-12.6**: 53
 - defined, **12.1-12.6**: 42
 - Concentration of solids by mass or weight (C_w), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 40
 - Concentration of solids by volume (C_v), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 40
 - Condensate pumps, **9.6.1**: 10
 - Condition monitoring (rotodynamic pumps) **9.6.5**: 1
 - baseline measurements, **9.6.5**: 3
 - bearing wear (plain bearings in sealless pumps), **9.6.5**: 20
 - corrosion, **9.6.5**: 8
 - defined, **9.6.5**: 55
 - definitions, **9.6.5**: 2
 - design review, **9.6.5**: 22
 - failure modes (with causes and indicators), **9.6.5**: 2, 30t.
 - frequency, **9.6.5**: 3
 - indicators (with causes and failure modes), **9.6.5**: 2, 36t.
 - leakage, **9.6.5**: 10
 - maintenance inspection, **9.6.5**: 24
 - periodic lubricant analysis, **9.6.5**: 16
 - power, **9.6.5**: 4
 - preinstallation hydrostatic test, **9.6.5**: 54
 - pressure, **9.6.5**: 13
 - rate of flow, **9.6.5**: 19
 - shaft position, **9.6.5**: 18
 - speed (rpm), **9.6.5**: 20
 - temperature, **9.6.5**: 6
 - vibration, **9.6.5**: 14
 - Condition points, **2.1-2.2**: 34
 - Condition points, definitions, **1.1-1.2**: 70, **12.1-12.6**: 35
 - Condition, **9.6.5**: 55, **9.6.9**: 27
 - Condition monitoring defined, **9.6.9**: 27
 - failure modes, **9.6.9**: 15t.
 - indicators, **9.6.9**: 23t.
 - Confidentiality, **40.7**: 4
 - Connecting piping, **12.1-12.6**: 91
 - Considerations in the specification of dynamic analysis, **9.6.8**: 16

- Considerations in the specification of dynamic analysis —
Continued
 market influences and trends considerations, **9.6.8:**
 16
 pump and system configuration proven field
 experience, **9.6.8:** 16
 Consolidated range chart (metric units), **3.1-3.5:** 5f.
 Consolidated range chart (US customary units), **3.1-3.5:**
 6f.
 Consolidated range charts, **3.1-3.5:** 2
 Constant-speed pumps, in trench-type wet wells, **9.8:** 76
 Constant-speed systems, **9.6.9:** 14
 Construction drawings, **12.1-12.6:** 4, 5f.–20f.
 Construction Industry Manufacturers Association (CIMA),
1.3: 120
 Contact or continuity switches, **9.6.5:** 21
 Containment
 and leakage through containment shell, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 and leakage through stator line, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 and oil-filled stator with pressure relief valve, **5.1-5.6:**
 21
 design pressure ratings, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 for MDP with metallic pressure barriers, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 induced eddy currents, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 of liquid, **14.6:** 38
 purpose, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 secondary containment for CMP, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 secondary containment for MDP, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 secondary containment requirements for CMP, **5.1-5.6:**
 21
 secondary containment requirements for MDP, **5.1-5.6:**
 21
 secondary leakage containment or control, **5.1-5.6:** 21
 substantiation of capabilities for nonmetallic shells,
5.1-5.6: 21
 Containment shell, **4.1-4.6:** 14, **9.6.9:** 8
 air in, **4.1-4.6:** 24
 defined, **4.1-4.6:** 8, **5.1-5.6:** 18, 19
 draining, **4.1-4.6:** 25
 thickness and materials, **4.1-4.6:** 18
 Continuous service, **2.3:** 39
 Contractors Pump Bureau (CPB), **1.3:** 120
 Contractual agreement(S), **40.7:** 2
 Control limits alarm limit, **9.6.5:** 4
 defined, **9.6.5:** 55
 shutdown limit, **9.6.5:** 4
 Control limits, **9.6.9:** 5, 27
See also Alarm limits; Shut-down limits
 Controlled-volume metering pumps, **7.1-7.5:** 1, **7.6:** 1
 “Y” strainer, **7.1-7.5:** 23
 accuracy and performance, defined, **7.1-7.5:** 11
 accuracy, steady state, defined, **7.1-7.5:** 11
 application data requirements, **7.1-7.5:** 21
 automatically controlled, defined, **7.1-7.5:** 8
 backpressure valve, **7.1-7.5:** 23
 basic elements of, **7.1-7.5:** 1, 1f.
 calibration column, **7.1-7.5:** 23
 capacity, actual rate of flow (Q_A), defined, **7.1-7.5:** 11
 capacity, adjustment, defined, **7.1-7.5:** 11
 capacity, design rate of flow (Q_D), defined, **7.1-7.5:** 11
 capacity, rate of flow (Q), defined, **7.1-7.5:** 11
 check valves, **7.1-7.5:** 10
 choice of driver, **7.1-7.5:** 22
 construction characteristics, **7.1-7.5:** 1
 control methods, **7.1-7.5:** 22
 defined, **7.1-7.5:** 1
 definitions, **7.1-7.5:** 11
 diaphragm hydraulic system, **7.1-7.5:** 10
 diaphragms, **7.1-7.5:** 10
 diaphragms, double, with leak detection systems, **7.1-**
7.5: 22
 diaphragms, leak detection, **7.1-7.5:** 10
 diaphragms, multiple, **7.1-7.5:** 10
 discharge piping, **7.1-7.5:** 23
 double diaphragms, with leak detection systems, **7.1-**
7.5: 22
 drive alignment after piping installation, **7.1-7.5:** 25
 drive and control mechanisms, **7.1-7.5:** 5
 drive and control mechanisms, **7.1-7.5:** 5
 efficiency, mechanical, defined, **7.1-7.5:** 12
 efficiency, volumetric, defined, **7.1-7.5:** 12
 electromagnetic drive (solenoid), **7.1-7.5:** 6, 6f.
 environment, **7.1-7.5:** 22
 fittings, **7.1-7.5:** 25
 fixed stroke-length drives, **7.1-7.5:** 6, 7f.
 flanges and fittings, **7.1-7.5:** 25
 flexible coupling, **7.1-7.5:** 25
 forces and moments, **7.1-7.5:** 24
 foundation, **7.1-7.5:** 24
 gas vent valves, **7.1-7.5:** 22
 gaskets, **7.1-7.5:** 25
 general principles, **7.1-7.5:** 19
 hydraulic coupled conical diaphragm, **7.1-7.5:** 5, 5f.
 hydraulic coupled disc diaphragm, **7.1-7.5:** 4, 4f.
 hydraulic coupled tubular diaphragm, **7.1-7.5:** 5, 5f.
 hydraulic lost-motion drives, **7.1-7.5:** 8, 9f.
 Impulse counters, **7.1-7.5:** 22
 Industries, typical, **7.1-7.5:** 16
 injection check valve, **7.1-7.5:** 23
 inspection, **7.1-7.5:** 26
 installation, **7.1-7.5:** 24
 installation, operation and maintenance, **7.1-7.5:** 23,
 26t.
 linearity, defined, **7.1-7.5:** 12
 liquid end assembly, **7.1-7.5:** 2, 10
 liquid end, **7.1-7.5:** 2
 location of pump, **7.1-7.5:** 24
 lubrication, **7.1-7.5:** 25
 maintenance. *See* Installation, operation and
 maintenance, **7.1-7.5:** 23
 manually controlled, defined, **7.1-7.5:** 10
 materials of construction, **7.1-7.5:** 22
 mechanical coupled disc diaphragm, **7.1-7.5:** 3, 3f.
 mechanical lost-motion drives, **7.1-7.5:** 8, 8f.

Controlled-volume metering pumps — *Continued*

- multiple diaphragm, **7.1-7.5**: 10
- multiplex pump, **7.1-7.5**: 10
- net positive inlet pressure available (nPIPA), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 12
- net positive suction head available (nPSHA), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 12
- nomenclature, **7.1-7.5**: 8
- optional pump features, **7.1-7.5**: 22
- pipe dope, **7.1-7.5**: 25
- pipe tape, **7.1-7.5**: 25
- piping, **7.1-7.5**: 24
- piston, **7.1-7.5**: 3
- plunger, **7.1-7.5**: 2, 2f.
- power, pump input, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 14
- power, pump output (hydraulic horsepower), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 14
- pressure, acceleration (p_{acc}), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 14
- pressure, differential, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 14
- pressure, discharge (p_d), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- pressure, discharge, rated, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- pressure, friction loss (p_f), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- pressure, gauge and snubbers, **7.1-7.5**: 23
- pressure, sensors, **7.1-7.5**: 22
- pressure, suction (p_s), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- pressure, suction, maximum allowable ($p_{s\ max}$), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- pressure, suction, minimum allowable (MASP), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- pressure, total system discharge, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- priming, **7.1-7.5**: 25
- pulsation dampener, **7.1-7.5**: 23
- pump displacement (D), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 11
- pump liquid end assembly, **7.1-7.5**: 2, 10
- pumping action and reciprocating piston, **7.1-7.5**: 19
- pumping action, **7.1-7.5**: 1
- rate of flow and discharge pressure, **7.1-7.5**: 19, 19f.
- rate of flow and stroke length, **7.1-7.5**: 20, 20f.
- rate of flow and turndown, **7.1-7.5**: 21
- rate of flow, **7.1-7.5**: 1
- rate of flow, average flow profile, **7.1-7.5**: 20, 20f.
- rate of flow, formula, **7.1-7.5**: 19
- rate of flow, theoretical and actual curves, **7.1-7.5**: 20, 20f.
- reciprocating air drive, **7.1-7.5**: 6, 7f.
- remotely mounted liquid end, **7.1-7.5**: 10
- repeatability, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- safety, **7.1-7.5**: 23
- safety, relief valve, **7.1-7.5**: 23, 25
- selection, **7.1-7.5**: 21
- simplex pump, **7.1-7.5**: 10
- sizing and selection, **7.1-7.5**: 21
- slip (S), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- storage, **7.1-7.5**: 24
- stroke counters, **7.1-7.5**: 22
- stroke frequency adjustment, **7.1-7.5**: 21
- stroke length adjustment, **7.1-7.5**: 21
- stroke speed, maximum allowable, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- stroke speed, minimum allowable, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- strokeleness (L_m), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- strokespeed (n), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 15
- subscripts, **7.1-7.5**: 18t.
- suction lift, static, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- suction lift, total, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- suction piping, **7.1-7.5**: 22
- suction, flooded, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- symbols troubleshooting, **7.1-7.5**: 26, 26t.
- symbols, **7.1-7.5**: 17t.
- system components, **7.1-7.5**: 22
- temperature sensors, **7.1-7.5**: 22
- temperature, maximum rated (t_{max}), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- temperature, minimum rated (t_{min}), defined, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- terminology definitions, **7.1-7.5**: 11
- terminology, nomenclature, **7.1-7.5**: 8
- terminology, see also subscripts;
- turndown ratio, defined, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- typical uses and industries, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- uses, typical, **7.1-7.5**: 16
- variable stroke-length drive mechanisms (non-lost-motion), **7.1-7.5**: 8, 9f.
- Conversion factors, **11.6**: 67 t. , **14.6**: 84, 84 t.
- Conversion of kinematic viscosity units, **9.6.7**: 31
- centipoise (cP) to centistokes (cSt), **9.6.7**: 31
- centistokes (cSt) to Seconds Saybolt Universal (SSU), **9.6.7**: 31
- conversion from CGS units to SI units, **9.6.7**: 32
- conversion from SI units to CGS units, **9.6.7**: 32
- dynamic (absolute) viscosity to kinematic viscosity, **9.6.7**: 31
- pascal-seconds (Pa•s) to square meters per second (m²/s), **9.6.7**: 32
- Seconds Saybolt Universal (SSU) to centistokes (cSt), **9.6.7**: 31
- Cooling liquid flow path, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 8
- Cooling liquid flow, **4.1-4.6**: 14
- Cooling, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Cooling-loop blockage, **9.6.9**: 7
- Copper and copper alloys aluminum bronze, **9.1-9.5**: 20
- copper-nickel alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 20
- high copper, **9.1-9.5**: 19
- leaded nickel bronze (nickel silvers), **9.1-9.5**: 20
- leaded red brass, **9.1-9.5**: 19
- silicon bronze, **9.1-9.5**: 19
- tin bronze, **9.1-9.5**: 19
- yellow brass, **9.1-9.5**: 19
- Corporation stops, **7.8**: 14, 15f
- Correction factor equations for efficiency, **9.6.7**: 9
- for flow, **9.6.7**: 8
- for head, **9.6.7**: 8
- for parameter B based on the water performance best efficiency flow, **9.6.7**: 8
- for viscous pump shaft input power, **9.6.7**: 9
- Correction factors

- Correction factors — *Continued*
 - defined empirically from a data bank, **9.6.7**: 3
 - defined from a physical model, **9.6.7**: 3
 - equations used to develop, **9.6.7**: 8
 - example, single-stage pump (metric units), **9.6.7**: 10
 - example, single-stage pump (US customary units), **9.6.7**: 13
 - methods of determination, **9.6.7**: 3
- Corrective action, **40.7**: 8
- Corrosion allowance for metallic rotodynamic pumps, **1.3**: 11
- Corrosion monitoring, **9.6.5**: 8
 - alarm limits, **9.6.5**: 9
 - by electrical resistance (ER), **9.6.5**: 9
 - by linear polarization resistance (LPR), **9.6.5**: 9
 - by ultrasonic thickness measurement (UTM), **9.6.5**: 9
 - by visual/dimensional inspection, **9.6.5**: 8
 - frequency, **9.6.5**: 9
 - means of, **9.6.5**: 8
- Corrosion potential, **7.8**: 8
- Corrosion, **2.3**: 78
 - and aeration, **2.3**: 79
 - and materials for rotodynamic vertical pumps, **2.3**: 80
 - and protective coatings, **2.3**: 80
 - and rust coating, **2.3**: 78
 - and water quality analysis, **2.3**: 79
 - defined, **2.3**: 78, **12.1-12.6**: 43
 - failure mode indicated by temperature monitoring, **9.6.9**: 7
 - galvanic, **2.3**: 78
 - intergranular, **2.3**: 78
 - mechanism of, **2.3**: 78
 - pitting, **2.3**: 79
 - uniform, **2.3**: 78
- Corrosion/erosion/contamination, **9.1-9.5**: 11
- Corrosive environments, **7.8**: 8
- Cost and lead time considerations, **9.6.8**: 26
- Coupling selection, **4.1-4.6**: 15
- Couplings, **1.3**: 57, 58t. , **2.3**: 29, **3.1-3.5**: 58
 - alignment, **1.3**: 59
 - common flexible types, **3.1-3.5**: 58
 - condition monitoring failure modes, **9.6.9**: 19t.
 - disk, **1.3**: 59
 - driveshaft, **1.3**: 57
 - elastomeric, **1.3**: 59
 - failure indicated by power monitoring, **9.6.9**: 5
 - failure indicated by vibration monitoring, **9.6.9**: 12
 - flanged adjustable spacer, rigid style, **2.3**: 30 f.
 - flanged adjustable, rigid style, **2.3**: 30 f.
 - flexible, **3.1-3.5**: 58
 - gear, **1.3**: 59
 - guards, **3.1-3.5**: 59
 - in sump pump configuration, **2.3**: 62, 63 f., 65, 71
 - limited end float, **1.3**: 58
 - magnetic, **9.6.9**: 5, 7, 8
 - maintenance inspection for failure, **9.6.5**: 24, 25
 - offset, **1.3**: 57
 - shaft hub attachment methods, **3.1-3.5**: 59
 - speed limitations, **1.3**: 59
- CPB. See Contractors Pump Bureau
- Cracking pressure, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- Credit cards/magnet tape, caution regarding, **4.1-4.6**: 23
- Critical carrying velocity, **6.1-6.5**: 34
- Critical damping ratio, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Critical damping, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Critical speed, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Cross-coupling, defined, **9.6.8**: 58
- Cross-flow, controlling, **9.8**: 58, 61f.
- Cross-sectional drawings section, **1.4**: 38
- Cup type pistons composition cups, **6.1-6.5**: 78, 79f.
 - installation, **6.1-6.5**: 79
 - synthetic rubber cups, **6.1-6.5**: 79, 79f.
- Curie temperature, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 8, **5.1-5.6**: 17
- Curtain walls, **9.8**: 65
- Curve shape, **20.3**: 2
- Cutwater area, **1.3**: 1
- Cyclic service, **2.3**: 39
- D slide valves, **8.1-8.5**: 6, 6f.
- D. See Displacement
- D. See *also* Pump displacement
- D_2 . See Impeller diameter (D_2)
- Discharge recirculation, **1.3**: 72
- DA system current measurement module (output)
 - calibration data, **14.6**: 77 t. , **40.6**: 36 t.
 - lab calibration devices, published accuracy, **14.6**: 75 t. , **40.6**: 34 t.
 - lab DC current source calibration data, **14.6**: 76 t. , **40.6**: 35 t.
 - lab precision DC current measurement device calibration data, **14.6**: 76 t. , **40.6**: 35 t.
 - lab pressure calibrator calibration data, **14.6**: 75 t. , **40.6**: 34 t.
 - pressure transducer calibration, **14.6**: 77 t. , **40.6**: 36 t.
- Damped natural frequency analysis of OH or BB pumps, **9.6.8**: 47
 - analysis, **9.6.8**: 48
 - interpretation of results, **9.6.8**: 48
 - methodology, **9.6.8**: 47
 - model, **9.6.8**: 47
 - validation, **9.6.8**: 49
- Damped torsional analysis, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
- Dampening devices, **7.6**: 9
- Damping, **9.6.8**: 27
 - defined, **9.6.8**: 59
- Data element groups, **50.7**: 12
- Data elements, **50.7**: 11
 - additional data to support API 610/ISO 13709 data sheet, **50.7**: 14
 - and bid, quotation, and purchasing, **50.7**: 10
 - and equipment types, **50.7**: 10, 11t.
 - and field names, **50.7**: 11, 12
 - and HI data exchange compliance levels, **50.7**: 1, 11, 15, 17t.

Data elements — *Continued*

- and pump technology designations, **50.7**: 11, 18, 19t.
- and R/D/S field designations, **50.7**: 11, 12, 13, 17 t.
- and units of measure, **50.7**: 12
- and work processes, **50.7**: 10, 11t.
- classes, **50.7**: 12
- See also Pump data transaction set
- Data exchange. See Electronic data exchange
- Data field definitions, **50.7**: 13
- Data sheets standardization of, **50.7**: 1
- usefulness and examples of, **50.7**: 8
- Data sheets, **3.1-3.5**: 50, **7.6**: 11
- example, **3.1-3.5**: 51f.
- Datum
 - defined, **12.1-12.6**: 33, **3.1-3.5**: 19, **3.6**: 4, **6.6**: 5
 - elevations for various slurry pump designs, **12.1-12.6**: 34f.
 - elevation for various pump designs at eye of first-stage impeller, **1.1-1.2**: 69 f.
 - elevation for various pump designs, **14.6**: 8 f.
- Datum elevation, **2.1-2.2**: 33 f.
- Debris, **9.8**: 107–108
- control and removal, **9.8**: 109
- Decision matrix, **9.6.8**: 12t.
- Decontamination of returned products procedure, **9.1-9.5**: 42
- Decouple, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 17
- Decoupling torque test, **4.1-4.6**: 29
- Decoupling, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 8
- Deep-well pumps (VS1), **2.1-2.2**: 4 f.
- Default test acceptance grades, **14.6**: 18
- based on purchaser's intended service, **14.6**: 18, 18 t.
- Definitions of terms, **9.6.8**: 58
- Definitions, **2.1-2.2**: 28, **3.1-3.5**: 15, **6.1-6.5**: 24–35, **8.1-8.5**: 7, **12.1-12.6**: 31–44
- Demagnetization, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 8, **5.1-5.6**: 17
- Dephase, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 8
- Deposit velocity (V_{stp}), **12.1-12.6**: 48
- defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41
- Design, **4.1-4.6**: 13
- auxiliary piping, **5.1-5.6**: 32
- casing, **5.1-5.6**: 22
- circulation plans, **5.1-5.6**: 25
- containment, **5.1-5.6**: 21
- data to be supplied by purchaser, **5.1-5.6**: 20
- dynamic balance, **5.1-5.6**: 24
- electrical component and installation requirements, **5.1-5.6**: 20
- external bearings (MDP), **5.1-5.6**: 23
- external couplings and guards (MDP), **5.1-5.6**: 31
- for pumps that handle liquids other than water, **5.1-5.6**: 20
- gaskets and joint bolting, **5.1-5.6**: 21
- general, **5.1-5.6**: 20
- instrumentation options, **5.1-5.6**: 32
- integral motors (CMP), **5.1-5.6**: 23
- internal bearings, **5.1-5.6**: 22
- magnetic couplings (MDP), **5.1-5.6**: 24
- manufacturer responsibility for engineering coordination, **5.1-5.6**: 20
- materials, **5.1-5.6**: 24
- mean time between repair, **5.1-5.6**: 20
- mounting of pumps, **5.1-5.6**: 31
- venting and draining, **5.1-5.6**: 22
- Design and application
 - alternative designs, **5.1-5.6**: 19
 - basic design, **5.1-5.6**: 20
 - minimum requirements for pumps, **5.1-5.6**: 19
 - shaft seals, **5.1-5.6**: 20
 - special considerations for sealless pumps, **5.1-5.6**: 20
- Design and application considerations, **3.1-3.5**: 33
- drive specifications, **3.1-3.5**: 42
- duty cycle, **3.1-3.5**: 44
- effect of vapor pressure on pump performance, **3.1-3.5**: 42
- efficiency and energy conservation, **3.1-3.5**: 42
- fluid type, **3.1-3.5**: 34
- liquid identification and properties, **3.1-3.5**: 34
- noise levels, **3.1-3.5**: 48
- other fluid properties, **3.1-3.5**: 42
- other user requirements, **3.1-3.5**: 44
- rotary multiphase pumps in oil and gas application, **3.1-3.5**: 50
- slurry applications, **3.1-3.5**: 44
- specific gravity (s), **3.1-3.5**: 41
- temperature, **3.1-3.5**: 33
- vapor pressure, **3.1-3.5**: 41
- viscosity, **3.1-3.5**: 37
- Design guidelines, **8.1-8.5**: 13
- Design Institute for Physical Properties (DIPPR), **50.7**: 3
- Design of rectangular wet wells, **9.8**: 87
- cleaning procedures, **9.8**: 88
- design alternatives, **9.8**: 88
- design capacity, **9.8**: 87
- high-level entry intake structure, **9.8**: 88, 89f., 90f.
- low-level entry intake structure, **9.8**: 88, 91f.
- sump dimensions, **9.8**: 88, 92f.
- Design review, **9.6.5**: 22
- frequency, **9.6.5**: 24
- hydraulic applications, **9.6.5**: 22
- installation, **9.6.5**: 23
- mechanical applications, **9.6.5**: 22
- operating procedures, **9.6.5**: 24
- Desired data, **50.7**: 13, 14
- See also R/D/S field designations
- Determination of pump head, **14.6**: 36 f.
- Determination, application, and calculation of instrument (systematic) uncertainty, **14.6**: 72, **40.6**: 31
- distribution of probability, **14.6**: 73, **40.6**: 32
- example calculations, **14.6**: 74, **40.6**: 33
- example with discharge pressure transducer, **14.6**: 74, 75, **40.6**: 33, 34
- example with venturi flowmeter, **14.6**: 74, 80, **40.6**: 33, 39

- Determination, application, and calculation of instrument (systematic) uncertainty — *Continued*
 types A and B evaluations, **14.6:** 72, **40.6:** 31
- Determining overall pump efficiency, **40.6:** 10
- Determining pump efficiency considerations, **40.6:** 9
 other pump types, **40.6:** 9
 submersible pumps, **40.6:** 9
 type VS0, **40.6:** 9
 types VS1 and VS3, **40.6:** 9
 vertically suspended pumps, **40.6:** 9
- Deviation from normally attainable efficiency (metric units), **20.3:** 10 f.
- Deviation from normally attainable efficiency (US customary units), **20.3:** 11 f.
- Diaphragms
 double, with leak detection systems, **7.8:** 7
 leak detection, **7.8:** 7
- Differential pressure (Δp)
 calculation, **3.6:** 13
 defined, **3.1-3.5:** 21, **3.6:** 6
- Differential pressure, **8.1-8.5:** 11, **9.6.9:** 12
- Dilatant fluid, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 39, 39f.
- Dimensionally interchangeable pump, **2.1-2.2:** 19
- Direct-acting (steam) pumps all bronze, **9.1-9.5:** 14
 all iron, **9.1-9.5:** 14
 bronze fitted, **9.1-9.5:** 14
- Direct-acting (steam) pumps defined, **8.1-8.5:** 1
 double-acting pump, **8.1-8.5:** 1
 duplex pump, **8.1-8.5:** 2, 3f.
 horizontal pump, **8.1-8.5:** 1
 inspection, **8.1-8.5:** 26
 nomenclature, **8.1-8.5:** 2
 piston pump, **8.1-8.5:** 1, 2f.
 simplex pump, **8.1-8.5:** 1, 3f.
 types, **8.1-8.5:** 1, 1f.
 typical services, **8.1-8.5:** 13
 vertical pump, **8.1-8.5:** 1
- Direction of rotation, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 18
- Discharge pipe or hose, **2.3:** 65, 73, **7.6:** 9
- Discharge piping, **6.1-6.5:** 49f., 56
- Discharge port, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 16
- Discharge pressure (p_d), **8.1-8.5:** 10, **9.6.9:** 11
 See Outlet pressure
- Discharge pressure (p_d), defined, **7.8:** 3
- Discharge pressure gauge, **7.6:** 9
- Discharge pressure transducer example calculation of percent uncertainty for the discharge pressure, full system of 300 psi pressure transducer and data acquisition system, **14.6:** 79 t., **40.6:** 38 t.
- Disclaimer, **5.1-5.6:** 1
- Disk friction losses, **9.6.7:** 19
- Displacement (D), **6.1-6.5:** 24, **8.1-8.5:** 9
 defined, **3.1-3.5:** 18, **3.6:** 2
- Distribution of probability Type B forms, **40.6:** 32
- DOE compared to HI 40.6 nomenclature, **40.6:** 30, 30 t.
- Double diaphragms, with leak detection systems, **7.8:** 7
- Double suction impellers, **2.3:** 6 f., 6
- Double suction pumps, **20.3:** 5 t.
- Double-acting pump, **6.1-6.5:** 1f., 2f., 3
- Double-walled piping systems, **7.8:** 8
- Drains, **8.1-8.5:** 27
- Drilling applications, **12.1-12.6:** 45
- Drive (steam) cylinder, **8.1-8.5:** 6
- Drive (steam) end, **8.1-8.5:** 4, 5f.
 lubrication, **8.1-8.5:** 18, 27
- Drive (steam) piston, **8.1-8.5:** 6
- Drive characteristics, **4.1-4.6:** 21
- Drive section, defined, **5.1-5.6:** 14
- Drive train arrangements, **12.1-12.6:** 85
- Driven component liner, defined, **5.1-5.6:** 18
- Driver power. See Total input power
- Drivers, **1.3:** 153, **7.6:** 8
 deceleration devices (flywheels, etc.), **1.3:** 176, **2.3:** 94
 eddy current drives, **1.3:** 176
 functions and parameters for selection, **1.3:** 154t.
 gears, **2.3:** 94
 in VS4 line-shaft design sump pumps, **2.3:** 65
 in VS5 cantilever shaft design sump pumps, **2.3:** 73
 pedestal, **2.3:** 65, 74
 See also Electric motors; Engines; Steam turbines
 selection, **2.3:** 81, 81 t.
 sizing, **2.3:** 81
 types, **2.3:** 81
 variable-speed drives and gears, **1.3:** 176, **2.3:** 94
- Dry critical speed analysis, defined, **9.6.8:** 59
- Dry pit (nonclog) pumps, **1.3:** 117, 118f.
- Dry run, **9.6.9:** 8
- Dual pressurized seal arrangements, **9.6.9:** 10, 10t.
- Dual pressurized seals, **12.1-12.6:** 79–80, 80f.
 defined, **12.1-12.6:** 38
- Dual seals, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 37
- Dual unpressurized seal arrangements, **9.6.9:** 10, 10t.
- Dual unpressurized seals, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 38
- Ductile iron, **12.1-12.6:** 67
- Dunkerly equation, **9.6.8:** 40
- Duplex pump, **6.1-6.5:** 3
- Duplex stainless steels, **12.1-12.6:** 67
- Duplicate performance pump, **2.1-2.2:** 19
- Duplicate, defined, **9.6.8:** 59
- Duty point. See Guarantee point
- Dynamic analysis
 Dynamic analysis sample specification wording, **9.6.8:** 86
 Dynamic analysis sample specifications, **9.6.8:** 84
 instructions for specification writers, **9.6.8:** 84
 reduction of vibration and reliability problems, **9.6.8:** 27
 separation margin, **9.6.8:** 84
 Dynamic analysis sample specifications, motor reed
 critical frequency, **9.6.8:** 90
 instructions to motor purchasers, **9.6.8:** 90
 instructions to specification writers, **9.6.8:** 90
 sample specification, **9.6.8:** 90
 Dynamic balancing. See two-plane balancing
 Economic consequences, **9.6.9:** 4, 4t.

- Eddy current defined, **4.1-4.6:** 8, **5.1-5.6:** 14
 drive, defined, **4.1-4.6:** 8
 losses, defined, **4.1-4.6:** 8
 magnetic coupling, **4.1-4.6:** 13
 Eddy current drive, defined, **5.1-5.6:** 17
 Effective particle diameter, **6.1-6.5:** 34
 Effects of liquid viscosity on pump performance, **9.6.7:** 1
 differences between 2010 and 2015 versions, **9.6.7:** 1
 summary, **9.6.7:** 1
 Efficiency (*h*), defined, **11.6:** 11
 Efficiency and energy conservation, **3.1-3.5:** 42
 Efficiency gain by polishing hydraulic surface example (metric units), **20.3:** 4
 Efficiency prediction method, **1.3:** 81
 Efficiency ratio (η_r), defined, **12.1-12.6:** 41
 Efficiency reduction due to specific speed (metric units), **20.3:** 7 f.
 Efficiency reduction due to specific speed (US customary units), **20.3:** 9 f.
 Efficiency reduction factor (R_η), **12.1-12.6:** 53
 defined, **12.1-12.6:** 41
 Efficiency, **6.1-6.5:** 29
 Elastomers, **12.1-12.6:** 66, 67–68
 bonded to metals, **12.1-12.6:** 66
 linings, storage of, **12.1-12.6:** 92
 synthetic rubber, **12.1-12.6:** 68
 Electric motor input power (P_{mot}) [P_1], defined, **1.1-1.2:** 72, **2.1-2.2:** 36, **12.1-12.6:** 36
 Electric motors, **1.3:** 153, **2.3:** 83
 alternating-current (AC) polyphase, **1.3:** 156, **2.3:** 83
 alternating-current (AC) single-phase, **1.3:** 155, **2.3:** 83
 and altitude, **1.3:** 163, **2.3:** 91
 and frequency, **2.3:** 91
 and hazardous locations and materials, **2.3:** 92
 and shaft-mounted fans, **2.3:** 87
 bearings, **2.3:** 87
 Class I-III hazardous locations, **2.3:** 92
 classified (or regulated) areas (hazardous atmospheres), **1.3:** 164
 closed-circuit cooling, **2.3:** 87
 construction, **2.3:** 84
 cooling fluids, **2.3:** 87
 cooling in VSO-style pumps, **2.3:** 87
 cooling methods, **1.3:** 158, **2.3:** 86
 definition of first numeral in IP classification system, **2.3:** 86 t.
 definition of second numeral in IP classification system, **2.3:** 86 t.
 degree of protection, **2.3:** 85, 86 t.
 direct current (DC), **1.3:** 156
 Division 1-2 hazardous locations, **2.3:** 93
 dust-ignition proof, **2.3:** 92, 93
 dust-ignition-proof machines, **1.3:** 164
 dust-ignition-proof motor requirements, **1.3:** 166
 efficiency, **1.3:** 161, **2.3:** 90
 enclosures, **1.3:** 156, 157t., **2.3:** 84, 85 t.
 explosion-proof machines, **1.3:** 164
 explosion-proof motor requirements, **1.3:** 165
 explosion-proof, **2.3:** 92, 93
 frequency, **1.3:** 163
 Group A-D hazardous materials, **2.3:** 93
 horizontal mounting, **1.3:** 159
 industry standards, **1.3:** 168
 IP designation system (degree of protection), **1.3:** 157, 158t.
 motor bearings, **1.3:** 159
 NEMA Designs A-D, **1.3:** 161, 161f., **2.3:** 89
 open circuit cooling, **2.3:** 87
 performance characteristics, **1.3:** 160, **2.3:** 87
 power factor, **1.3:** 162, **2.3:** 90
 relationship between voltage and current, **1.3:** 160
 service factor, **1.3:** 163, **2.3:** 90
 squirrel-cage induction, **2.3:** 83
 starting torque, **1.3:** 160
 starting voltage and frequency, **2.3:** 91
 starting, **1.3:** 163
 starts, number of, **2.3:** 92
 synchronous, **2.3:** 84
 torque vs. speed, **1.3:** 160, **2.3:** 87, 88 f.
 torque–speed curves, **1.3:** 160f.
 types, **1.3:** 155, **2.3:** 83
 variable-speed power sources, **1.3:** 166
 vertical mounting, **1.3:** 159
 voltage–current relationship, **2.3:** 87
 wound rotor induction, **2.3:** 84
 Electric power input to motor, **40.6:** 25
 Electric power measurements, **40.6:** 25
 Electric power plant (non-nuclear) pumps, **9.6.1:** 9–10, 10t.
 Electrical current, for power monitoring, **9.6.5:** 5, **9.6.9:** 6
 Electrical resistance (ER), **9.6.5:** 9
 Electronic counters (in rotary speed measurement), **3.6:** 25
 Electronic counters, **9.6.9:** 14
 Electronic counters, in speed (rpm) monitoring, **9.6.5:** 20
 Electronic data dictionary, **50.7:** 1, 8
 Electronic data exchange (EDE), **50.7:** 1
 additional resources, **50.7:** 30
 and bounded set of data elements (dictionary), **50.7:** 8
 and business leaders/managers, **50.7:** 3
 and information technology staff and system implementation specialists, **50.7:** 4
 and neutral data exchange files, **50.7:** 8
 and pump specifiers and manufacturers, **50.7:** 4
 and universal digital format (XML), **50.7:** 8
 compliance levels for data elements, **50.7:** 1
 defined, **50.7:** 1
 demonstration of real usage scenarios, **50.7:** 22, 22 f.
 in bidding and quoting transactions, **50.7:** 1
 link to HI-EDE data dictionary, **50.7:** 31
 standards utilizing XML schemas, **50.7:** 1
 testing compliance with HI, **50.7:** 21

- Electronic data exchange (EDE) — *Continued*
units of measure and conversion for transactions,
50.7: 1
- Electronic instruments, caution regarding, **4.1-4.6**: 23
- Elevation head (Z) [H_{stat}], defined, **1.1-1.2**: 69, **2.1-2.2**:
32, **3.6**: 4, **6.6**: 5, **11.6**: 9, **12.1-12.6**: 33
- Elevation head, **6.1-6.5**: 28, **8.1-8.5**: 11
- Elevation pressure (p_z), **6.1-6.5**: 28, **8.1-8.5**: 11
defined, **3.1-3.5**: 19, **3.6**: 4, **6.6**: 5
equation, **3.6**: 4
- Encapsulation, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 8
- Enclosed impellers, **2.3**: 5, 6 f.
and axial thrust, **2.3**: 9 f., 9
- Enclosed line-shaft pumps, **2.3**: 16, 17 f., 18 f.
bearing bushings, **2.3**: 16
bearing lubrication, **2.3**: 20
bearing spacing, **2.3**: 19
- End plate, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
- End suction pumps – large, **20.3**: 5 t.
- End suction pumps – small, **20.3**: 5 t.
- Energy grade line (EGL), **9.8**: 80
- Engineered plastics applications, **9.1-9.5**: 27
- Engines, **1.3**: 168, 175f.
condition monitoring, **1.3**: 173
cooling, **1.3**: 170
diesel fuel grades, **1.3**: 174
diesel, **1.3**: 169
drive connections, **1.3**: 169
enclosures, **1.3**: 170
Engine Power Test Code, **1.3**: 174
gasoline, **1.3**: 169
mass elastic analysis, **1.3**: 175
mounting, **1.3**: 169
operating speeds, **1.3**: 172
operation, **1.3**: 172
package design considerations, **1.3**: 174
speed governing, **1.3**: 172
starting, **1.3**: 173
testing and performance, **1.3**: 174
types, **1.3**: 168
- Environmental consequences, **9.6.9**: 4, 4t.
- Environmental considerations, **5.1-5.6**: 35
- Equipment data sheets, **12.1-12.6**: 44
metric units, **12.1-12.6**: 100–101
US customary units, **12.1-12.6**: 102–103
- Equipment life cycle work process, **50.7**: 4, 5 f.
- ER. See Electrical resistance
- Erosion, **2.3**: 78
cavitation, **2.3**: 78
defined, **2.3**: 78, **12.1-12.6**: 43
maintenance inspection for, **9.6.5**: 24, 26
- Erosion–Corrosion, **2.3**: 78, **12.1-12.6**: 57
- Escritt modification, **9.8**: 77, 78t., 79t.
- Estimated efficiency decrease due to increased wear ring
clearance (metric units), **20.3**: 14 f.
- Estimated efficiency decrease due to increased wear ring
clearance (US customary units), **20.3**: 14 f.
- Estimated efficiency increase due to improved surface
finish (metric units), **20.3**: 12 f.
- Estimated efficiency increase due to improved surface
finish (US customary units), **20.3**: 13 f.
- Ex rating, **1.4**: 8, **2.4**: 8
- Excessive radial thrust, **1.3**: 72
- Excitation force level, **9.6.8**: 27
- Exclusions from standard, **9.6.4**: 2
- Expected pump efficiency due to increasing wearing ring
gap example (US customary units), **20.3**: 4
- Explosive atmosphere, caution regarding, **4.1-4.6**: 23
- External bearings (MDP)
lubrication, **5.1-5.6**: 23
- External flush fluid, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 38
- External gear pumps (flanged ports), **3.1-3.5**: 26f.
- External gear pumps (threaded ports), **3.1-3.5**: 26f.
- External gear pumps on baseplate, **3.1-3.5**: 27f.
- External gear pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 5f., 6f., 14f.
applications, **3.1-3.5**: 9
description, **3.1-3.5**: 9
range chart, **3.1-3.5**: 10f.
- Factors that influence efficiency, **20.3**: 1
factors not included, **20.3**: 3
impeller diameter trim, **20.3**: 2
internal clearances, **20.3**: 2
mechanical losses, **20.3**: 2
pumpage, **20.3**: 2
special impeller designs, **20.3**: 2
specific speed, **20.3**: 1
staging effect, **20.3**: 2
surface roughness, **20.3**: 1
thrust balance, **20.3**: 2
types of pumps, **20.3**: 1
- Factory performance tests, **9.6.3**: 2, **14.6**: 10
certified, **11.6**: 5
characteristics to be monitored, **9.6.3**: 2
nonwitnessed and certified, **14.6**: 10
nonwitnessed, **11.6**: 5, **14.6**: 10
remote witnessing by purchaser's representative, **11.6**:
6, **14.6**: 10
See also Performance test reports
Factory tests
witnessed, **11.6**: 5, **14.6**: 10
witnessing by purchaser's representative, **11.6**: 5,
14.6: 10
- Failure modes
defined, **9.6.5**: 55
for sealless pumps and pumps with journal bearings,
9.6.5: 35t.
with causes and indicators, **9.6.5**: 2, 30t.
- Failure modes characterization, **9.6.9**: 1
condition monitoring, **9.6.9**: 15t.
defined, **9.6.9**: 27
determining severity level, **9.6.9**: 4, 4t., 5t.
indicated by power monitoring, **9.6.9**: 5
indicated by temperature monitoring, **9.6.9**: 7
indicated by vibration monitoring, **9.6.9**: 12
- Failure, **9.6.9**: 27

- Failure, defined, **9.6.5**: 55
 FEA, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
 Ferrite, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10
 FIATECH/AEX, **50.7**: 1, 3
 informative content, **50.7**: 4
 intended audience, **50.7**: 3
 normative content, **50.7**: 4
 overview, **50.7**: 3
 purpose, **50.7**: 1
 scope, **50.7**: 1
 supported work processes and equipment types, **50.7**: 11, 11t.
 Field-test pressure, **1.1-1.2**: 73, **2.1-2.2**: 37
 Fillets, **9.8**: 85
 Filter, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
 Filtered high-frequency signal processing, **9.6.5**: 15, **9.6.9**: 12
 Filters/strainers, **7.8**: 16
 Fine-particle correction factor (C_{fp}), **12.1-12.6**: 53
 defined, **12.1-12.6**: 42
 Finite element analysis method (FEA), **9.6.8**: 35
 sources of errors, **9.6.8**: 35
 Finite element analysis, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
 First critical speed, defined, **9.6.8**: 38
 First dry critical speed of vertically suspended (VS) pumps, **9.6.8**: 46
 analysis, **9.6.8**: 46
 interpretation of results, **9.6.8**: 47
 methodology, **9.6.8**: 46
 model, **9.6.8**: 46
 validation, **9.6.8**: 47
 First transverse (lateral) critical speed, **9.6.8**: 39
 for a rotor with a single attached mass, **9.6.8**: 39
 for a shaft of constant cross section, **9.6.8**: 39
 for a shaft of negligible mass carrying several concentrated masses, **9.6.8**: 40
 for the angular or torsional case, **9.6.8**: 41
 Fittings, **8.1-8.5**: 16
 losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
 Flammable liquids or vapors, **8.1-8.5**: 16
 Flanges, **8.1-8.5**: 16, **12.1-12.6**: 85
 Flexible coupling, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
 Flexible foundation, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
 Flexible member pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 1f., 8
 flexible vane, **3.1-3.5**: 8
 peristaltic, **3.1-3.5**: 8
 Flexible rotor, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
 Flexible vane pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f., 14f.
 description, **3.1-3.5**: 8
 materials of construction, **3.1-3.5**: 8
 Flexibly coupled horizontal in-line, **1.1-1.2**: 40 f.
 Flooded suction, **6.1-6.5**: 31, **8.1-8.5**: 12
 Flooded suction, defined, **1.1-1.2**: 71, **2.1-2.2**: 35
 Floor clearance C_f , **9.8**: 20
 Floor cones, **9.8**: 83, 83f.
 Flow of liquid, **9.8**: 9, 51
 Flow rate (Q), defined, **6.1-6.5**: 24, **11.6**: 7
 Flow rate monitoring, **9.6.9**: 13
 Flow regime at intake, **9.8**: 109
 Flow separation in runout condition, **2.3**: 41
 Flow splitters, in wastewater wet wells, **9.8**: 84–85
 Flowchart describing workflow, **9.6.8**: 3f.
 Flowchart referencing applicable sections of guideline, **9.6.8**: 4f.
 Flowchart to determine pump performance on a viscous liquid when performance on water is known, **9.6.7**: 6f.
 Flowchart to establish if the procedure is applicable, **9.6.7**: 5f.
 Flowchart to select a pump for given head, rate of flow, and viscous conditions, **9.6.7**: 7f.
 Flowmeters, **6.6**: 18, **7.8**: 16
 Fluid types
 and pump ratings and performance data, **3.1-3.5**: 34
 chemical process, **9.1-9.5**: 5
 clear water, **9.1-9.5**: 5
 NACE guidelines, **9.1-9.5**: 5
 petroleum handling, **9.1-9.5**: 5
 Fluid whirl, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
 Fluids, applicable standards, **9.1-9.5**: 5
 Fluids, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
 Flux
 defined, **4.1-4.6**: 8
 density, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9
 Foot valves
 losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
 Forced response analysis of vertical pump, driver baseplate structural system, **9.6.8**: 57
 analysis, **9.6.8**: 57
 interpretation of results, **9.6.8**: 57
 model, **9.6.8**: 57
 validation, **9.6.8**: 57
 Forced response analysis OH or BB pump, driver baseplate structural system, **9.6.8**: 56
 analysis, **9.6.8**: 56
 interpretation of results, **9.6.8**: 56
 model, **9.6.8**: 56
 validation, **9.6.8**: 57
 Formed suction intake (FSI), **9.8**: 16, 67, 97
 alternative designs, **9.8**: 18
 application standards, **9.8**: 18
 recommended dimensions for, **9.8**: 17, 17f.
 shoe-box-type formed suction intake, **9.8**: 97, 99f.
 stork-type formed suction intake, **9.8**: 97, 98f.
 Foundation bolts, **3.1-3.5**: 56f.
 concrete mixture, **3.1-3.5**: 55
 defined, **3.1-3.5**: 55
 dimensions, **3.1-3.5**: 55
 Foundation rigidity
 horizontal pump structures, **9.6.8**: 14f.
 vertical pump structures using motor CG location, **9.6.8**: 14f.
 vertical pump structures using top motor bearing location, **9.6.8**: 15f.

- Foundation, **2.3**: 26, **6.1-6.5**: 68
 bolts, 68, 68f.
- Frame assembly. See Power end
- Frame mounted, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 3
- Frame selections
 open drip-proof, **2.1-2.2**: 84, 88 t.
 TEFC, **2.1-2.2**: 84
- Francis vane impeller, **2.1-2.2**: 19
- Free surface approach, **9.8**: 62, 63f.–65f.
- Free surface vortices, **9.8**: 49, 51–52, 52f., 65–66, 66f., 68f.
- Freight, caution regarding, **4.1-4.6**: 23
- Frequencies
 filtering out those outside measurement range, **9.6.4**: 3
 for electric motors, **2.3**: 91
 natural frequency and resonance, **9.6.4**: 17
 natural, **2.3**: 26
 ranges, **9.6.4**: 3
- Frequency of monitoring, **9.6.5**: 3
- Frequency separation, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
- Frequency-responsive devices (in rotary speed measurement), **3.6**: 25
- Fresh water lakes, **9.8**: 108
- Friction characteristic, **6.1-6.5**: 34
- Friction characteristic, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 40
- Friction head (h_f or h_j), defined, **1.1-1.2**: 70, **2.1-2.2**: 34, **12.1-12.6**: 35
- Friction head losses, **40.6**: 17
- Friction loss pressure (p_f), **6.1-6.5**: 28, **7.8**: 3
- Friction losses at inlet and outlet, **40.6**: 18
- Froth factors, **12.1-12.6**: 55
 application to pump selection, **12.1-12.6**: 55–57, 56f.
 defined, **12.1-12.6**: 54
 for common processes, **12.1-12.6**: 55, 55t.
- Froth pumping, **12.1-12.6**: 54–58
- Froth, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 54
- Froude number, **9.8**: 46, 49, 65, 77, 81, 85
- Full-flow relief pressure, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- Fundamental considerations, **9.6.7**: 2
 viscous correction factors, **9.6.7**: 2
- Galling resistance, **9.1-9.5**: 11
- Galling, defined, **9.1-9.5**: 11
- Galvanic corrosion, **9.1-9.5**: 8
 minimization of, **9.1-9.5**: 8
- Galvanic series of metals and alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 9 f.
- Galvanic series, **9.1-9.5**: 8
- Gap, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9
- Gas charged pulsation dampeners, **7.8**: 13
- Gas entrainment, **4.1-4.6**: 16
- Gas oil ratio (GOR), defined, **3.1-3.5**: 23
- Gas volume fraction (GVF), defined, **3.1-3.5**: 23
- Gaskets and joint bolting
 pressure containment fastener load requirement, **5.1-5.6**: 21
- Gaskets, **8.1-8.5**: 17
- Gauge head (h_g) [H_{max}], defined, **1.1-1.2**: 68, **2.1-2.2**: 31, **12.1-12.6**: 33
- Gauge pressure (p_g), defined, **3.1-3.5**: 19, **3.6**: 4, **6.1-6.5**: 28, **6.6**: 5, **8.1-8.5**: 11
- Gauge pressure in terms of head (h_g), defined, **11.6**: 8
- Gauges, **9.6.9**: 6, 11
- Gauss, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9
- Gear pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 1f., 3t., 4t.
 external gear, **3.1-3.5**: 3t., 4t., 9
 internal gear, **3.1-3.5**: 3t., 4t., 10
- General industrial pumping applications, **9.6.1**: 14
- Gilbert, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9
- Gland follower. See Gland
- Gland, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals (GHS), **5.1-5.6**: 34
- GOR. See Gas oil ratio
- Grades of accuracy
 Grades of accuracy, **14.6**: 11
 acceptance tolerances, **14.6**: 11
 and corresponding tolerance bands, **14.6**: 14, 14 t.
 default test acceptance grades, **14.6**: 18, 18 t.
 grade 1 (1B, 1E, 1U), **14.6**: 14, 14 t.
 grade 2 (2B, 2U), **14.6**: 14, 14 t.
 grade 3 (3B), **14.6**: 14, 14 t.
 permissible amplitude of fluctuations per grade, **11.6**: 35 t., **14.6**: 12, 12 t.
 pressure tapings for, **14.6**: 30, 30 f.
 See also Test tolerances, reasons for
 tolerance field for acceptance grade 1E, **14.6**: 15, 17 f.
 tolerance field for acceptance grades 1B, 2B, and 3B, **14.6**: 15, 17 t.
 tolerance field for acceptance grades 1U and 2U, **14.6**: 17 f.
- Graphite bearings, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Gray cast iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
- Guarantee point, **14.6**: 2, 10
 and maximum permissible measurement device uncertainty, **11.6**: 36 t., **14.6**: 13, 13 t.
 documentation, **14.6**: 11
- Guarantees, defined, **11.6**: 6
- Guideline for dynamics of pumping machinery, **9.6.8**: 1
 introduction, **9.6.8**: 1
 scope, **9.6.8**: 1
- GVF. See Gas volume fraction
- Gyroscopic effect, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
- h_{acc} . See Acceleration head
- Handling equipment and tools, **3.1-3.5**: 54
- Hard irons, **12.1-12.6**: 67, 95
- Head (h) [H], defined, **1.1-1.2**: 68, **2.1-2.2**: 31, **11.6**: 8, **12.1-12.6**: 33
- Head ratio (H_r), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41
- Head reduction factor (R_h), **12.1-12.6**: 53
 defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41
- Head shaft coupling, **2.3**: 29 f., 29
- Heavy-duty pusher seals, **12.1-12.6**: 81, 82f.
- Helico-axial pumps, **1.3**: 123, 123f.
- Hermetic integrity test

- Hermetic integrity test — *Continued*
 acceptance criteria alternatives, **4.1-4.6**: 28
 duration, **4.1-4.6**: 27
 objective, **4.1-4.6**: 27
 parameters, **4.1-4.6**: 27
 procedure, **4.1-4.6**: 27
 test fluid, **4.1-4.6**: 27
 test pressure, **4.1-4.6**: 27
 test temperature, **4.1-4.6**: 27
- Hermetic integrity test acceptance criteria, **5.1-5.6**: 49
 objective, **5.1-5.6**: 49
 parameters, **5.1-5.6**: 49
 procedure, **5.1-5.6**: 49
- Hermetic, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 1
- Heterogeneous mixture, **6.1-6.5**: 34, **12.1-12.6**: 40
- Heterogeneous slurries, **12.1-12.6**: 45
- HI 40.6, **40.7**: 2
- HI Board, defined, **40.7**: 1
- HI Graphics Style Guideline, **40.7**: 11
- HI method
 generalized method based on empirical data, **9.6.7**: 3
 new method versus old method, **9.6.7**: 3
 overview of procedure, **9.6.7**: 5
 synopsis, **9.6.7**: 3
- HI method for predicting performance of rotodynamic pumps on Newtonian liquids of viscosity greater than that of water, **9.6.7**: 1
- HI website, **40.7**: 14
 contents, **40.7**: 14
 defined, **40.7**: 1
- High-chromium iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
- High-speed integral gear-driven pumps, **1.1-1.2**: 2 f., 6
- High speed, integral gear, close coupled, single stage pump, **2.1-2.2**: 24 f.
- HI-NEMA type C face-mounted motors, standard dimensions, **1.1-1.2**: 84
 for HI-NEMA type HP and HPH vertical solid-shaft motors (US customary units), **2.1-2.2**: 89 t., 90 f.
 for type JM, alternating current, face-mounting, close-coupled pump motors (US customary units), **2.1-2.2**: 85 t.
 for type JP, alternating current, face-mounting, close-coupled pump motors (US customary units), **2.1-2.2**: 87 t.
 for types JM and JP, alternating current, face-mounting, close-coupled pump motors having rolling element contact bearings, **2.1-2.2**: 86 t.
- Hollow-shaft drivers, **2.1-2.2**: 11, 43, **2.3**: 28 f., 28
 coupling dimensions, **2.1-2.2**: 44 t.
- Homogeneous flow (fully suspended solids), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 40
- Homogeneous flow, **6.1-6.5**: 34
- Homogeneous mixture, **6.1-6.5**: 34
- Homogeneous mixture, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 40
- Homogeneous slurries, **12.1-12.6**: 45
- Horizontal end suction pumps (ANSI/ASME B73.1 and B73.3)
 alternate pump mounting, **9.6.2**: 9
 anchored, ungrouted metal baseplate, **9.6.2**: 9
 anchored, ungrouted nonmetal baseplate, **9.6.2**: 9
 applicable pump types, **9.6.2**: 1
 coordinate system, **9.6.2**: 2f.
 criteria for loading allowances, **9.6.2**: 3
 definitions, **9.6.2**: 2
 driver/pump coupling alignment, **9.6.2**: 3
 group 1 defined, **9.6.2**: 2
 group 2 defined, **9.6.2**: 2
 group 3 defined, **9.6.2**: 2
 grouted nonmetal baseplate with anchor bolts, **9.6.2**: 9
 internal pump distortion, **9.6.2**: 3
 material specification list, **9.6.2**: 4t.
 nomenclature and definitions, **9.6.2**: 1
 nozzle load adjustment factors, **9.6.2**: 8
 nozzle stress, **9.6.2**: 3
 pressure rating, **9.6.2**: 4
 pump hold-down bolts, **9.6.2**: 3
 pump mounting, **9.6.2**: 3
 scope, **9.6.2**: 1
 spring-mounted metal baseplate, **9.6.2**: 9
 stilt-mounted metal baseplate, **9.6.2**: 9, 9f.
 temperature and material adjustment factors, **9.6.2**: 9
 temperature of pressure-containing components, **9.6.2**: 4
- Horizontal gratings, **9.8**: 65–66
- Horizontal multistage pump, **20.3**: 5 t.
- Horizontal pump, **6.1-6.5**: 1f., 1
- Horizontal tank, **9.8**: 69–70, 70f., 71f.
- HPRT. *See* Hydraulic power recovery turbine (HPRT)
 Hydraulic power recovery turbine (HPRT), **1.3**: 115
- HVAC pumps, **9.6.1**: 12
- Hydraulic action, **8.1-8.5**: 17
- Hydraulic axial thrust balance, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 14
- Hydraulic condition monitoring failure modes, **9.6.9**: 21t.
- Hydraulic degradation, **9.6.9**: 12
- Hydraulic disturbances, **9.6.4**: 18
- Hydraulic horsepower. *See* Pump output power
- Hydraulic Institute contact information, **4.1-4.6**: 26
- Hydraulic Institute pump icons, **1.1-1.2**: 11, 73, 74 f.–81 f.
- Hydraulic losses, **9.6.7**: 19
- Hydraulic parasitic losses, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9
- Hydraulic performance acceptance tests (rotodynamic pumps), **14.6**: 1
 conducting at test facilities, **14.6**: 1
See also Factory performance tests; Hydrostatic pressure testing; Mechanical tests
See also Model tests for pump acceptance; NPSH tests; Optional tests; Performance tests
See also Pump acceptance tests; String tests; Thermodynamic test method
- Hydraulic performance, maintenance inspection for, **9.6.5**: 24, 27
- Hydraulic phenomena, **9.8**: 8–9
- Hydraulic piston packing, **8.1-8.5**: 20
 applications, **8.1-8.5**: 20

- Hydraulic piston packing — *Continued*
 fitting, **8.1-8.5**: 20, 21f.
 joint types, **8.1-8.5**: 20, 21f.
- Hydraulic power recovery turbine pumps, **1.1-1.2**: 7
- Hydraulic resonance in piping, **9.6.4**: 18
- Hydraulic resonance, defined, **1.4**: 31, **2.4**: 36
- Hydraulic shock. *See* Water hammer
- Hydraulic unbalance, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
- Hydrocarbon correction factor, **9.6.1**: 8
- Hydrocarbon physical properties, **6.1-6.5**: 62t., 64t.
- Hydrodynamic bearing effective support stiffness, **9.6.8**: 30
- Hydrodynamic radial bearings, **9.6.9**: 7
- Hydrogenated nitrile, **12.1-12.6**: 68
- Hydrostatic leak test, **7.8**: 7
- Hydrostatic pressure testing, **14.6**: 38
 acceptance criteria, **14.6**: 40
 application to all pressure-containing items, **14.6**: 38
 certificates, **14.6**: 41
 containment of liquid, **14.6**: 38
 definitions, **14.6**: 38
 duration, **14.6**: 40, 40 t.
 item(s) to be tested, **14.6**: 38
 preparation for, **14.6**: 39
 pressure-containing parts, **14.6**: 38
 procedure, **14.6**: 39
 rated pressure, **14.6**: 38
 records, **14.6**: 40
 repairs, **14.6**: 40
 reports, **14.6**: 41
 test liquid, **14.6**: 39
 test pressure, **14.6**: 39
 timing of, **14.6**: 38
- Hydrostatic test assembled pump, **6.6**: 14
 components, **6.6**: 14
 duration, **6.6**: 14
 objective, **6.6**: 13
 parameters, **6.6**: 14
 procedure, **6.6**: 14
 records, **6.6**: 14
 temperature, **6.6**: 14
 test liquid, **6.6**: 14
- Hydrostatic test pressure, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9
- Hydrostatic test, **3.6**: 1, 16, **11.6**: 4, 20
 acceptance criteria, **11.6**: 23
 certificate, **11.6**: 24
 containment of liquid, defined, **11.6**: 20
 definitions, **11.6**: 20
 item(s) to be tested, defined, **11.6**: 21
 longer test periods for certain castings, **11.6**: 23, 23 t.
 on components or assembled pumps, **3.6**: 16
 parameters, **3.6**: 16
 preparation for testing, **11.6**: 22
 pressure-containing parts, defined, **11.6**: 20
 procedure, **3.6**: 18, **11.6**: 22
 purpose, **11.6**: 21
 rated pressure, defined, **11.6**: 20
 records, **3.6**: 18
 repairs, **11.6**: 23
 report, **11.6**: 24
 requirements, **11.6**: 23
 setup, **11.6**: 21 f., 22
 test liquid, **11.6**: 22
 test pressure, **11.6**: 22
 timing of, **11.6**: 21
- Hysteresis, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9
- Icons, **1.1-1.2**: 11, 73, 74 f.–81 f.
- Identical performance and dimensional pump, **2.1-2.2**: 19
- Identical, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
- Impact testing, defined, **9.6.8**: 59
- Impeller balancing, **2.1-2.2**: 37
 defined, **2.1-2.2**: 73
 single-plane, **2.1-2.2**: 73
 two-plane, **2.1-2.2**: 73
- Impeller between bearings, flexibly coupled, multistage, axial (horizontal) split case pump, **1.1-1.2**: 31 f.
- Impeller between bearings, flexibly coupled, multistage, radial split case pump, **1.1-1.2**: 32 f.
- Impeller between bearings, flexibly coupled, multistage, radial split-double casing pump, **1.1-1.2**: 33 f.
- Impeller between bearings, flexibly coupled, single stage, axial (horizontal) split case pump, **1.1-1.2**: 29 f.
 pump dimensions (letter designations), **2.1-2.2**: 59, 62 f.
- Impeller between bearings, flexibly coupled, single stage, axial (horizontal) split case pump, pump on baseline (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2**: 59, 62 f.
- Impeller between bearings, flexibly coupled, single stage, radial split case pump, **1.1-1.2**: 30 f.
- Impeller between-bearing pumps, **1.1-1.2**: 3 f., 6
- impeller configuration and specific speeds, **2.1-2.2**: 20 f.
- Impeller designs
 axial flow, **2.1-2.2**: 10 f., 11, 11 f.
 classification method, **2.1-2.2**: 8
 double suction radial flow, **2.1-2.2**: 10 f.
 general types, **2.1-2.2**: 10 f.
 mixed flow, **2.1-2.2**: 10 f., 10
 propeller pump. *See* axial flow.
 radial flow, **2.1-2.2**: 10 f., 10
See also Specific speed
 specific speed (n_s), **2.1-2.2**: 8
 suction specific speed (S), **2.1-2.2**: 8
- Impeller diameter (D_2), **1.3**: 15, 16f.
- Impeller rotordynamic coefficients, defined, **9.6.8**: 60
- Impeller seal face, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 43
- Impeller types, **2.1-2.2**: 16
- Impeller width at discharge (b_2), **1.3**: 15, 16f.
- Impellers, **1.3**: 1, 11, **12.1-12.6**: 68–69
 balance of slurry pump type, **9.6.4**: 13
 balance quality grade G6.3 or better, **9.6.4**: 13, 14 f., 15 f.
 change in diameter and effect on flow rate, head, and power, **2.3**: 37, 38 f.
 double suction, **1.3**: 13, 13f., **2.3**: 6 f., 6

Impellers — *Continued*

- enclosed, **1.3:** 13, 13f., **2.3:** 5, 6 f.
- in sump pump configuration, **2.3:** 63 f., 64, 65, 72 f., 73
- in VS4 line-shaft design sump pumps, **2.3:** 63, 64, 65
- in VS5 cantilever shaft design sump pumps, **2.3:** 72 f., 73
- inducer first-stage, **2.3:** 7, 7 f.
- inducers (special suction impellers), **1.3:** 14, 14f.
- maintenance, **12.1-12.6:** 95
- multistage pumps, **1.3:** 13
- open axial flow, **2.3:** 6, 6 f.
- open impellers and two-phase pumping, **1.3:** 125
- open, **1.3:** 14, 14f.
- removal of, **12.1-12.6:** 92
- semi-open impeller showing diameter locations (cross section), **1.3:** 30f.
- semi-open impeller with full back shroud, **1.3:** 29f.
- semi-open impeller with scalloped back shroud, **1.3:** 29f.
- semi-open, **1.3:** 14, 14f., **2.3:** 6 f., 6
- single suction, **1.3:** 12f., 12
- single-plane spin balance, **9.6.4:** 13, 16 f.
- top suction impellers and two-phase pumping, **1.3:** 125, 125f.
- two-plane (dynamic) balancing, **9.6.4:** 13, 16 f.
- types, **1.3:** 11, 12f.
- with back rings, and axial thrust, **2.3:** 9 f., 10
- with no back rings, and axial thrust, **2.3:** 11
- Implementation of EDE, **50.7:** 20
 - and handling of extra data, **50.7:** 20
 - and non-HI data, **50.7:** 21
 - and R/D/S compliance levels, **50.7:** 20
 - and support for API 610/ISO 13709 data sheets, **50.7:** 20
 - and units of measure, **50.7:** 21
 - Step 1: Integrating with HI-EDE data elements, **50.7:** 20
 - Step 2: Producing and importing HI-EDE compliant documents, **50.7:** 21
 - Step 3: Testing the implementation, **50.7:** 21
- Indicators, **9.6.9:** 27
 - defined, **9.6.5:** 55
 - with causes and failure modes, **9.6.5:** 2, 36t.
- Inducer impellers, **2.3:** 7, 7 f.
- Inducers, **1.3:** 14, 14f.
- Induction motor, defined, **5.1-5.6:** 16
- Industry partnerships, **50.7:** 2
- Inert gas sniffer test, **4.1-4.6:** 27
- Inflow pipe, circular pump stations, **9.8:** 20
- Influence of disk friction losses on viscosity correction factor for efficiency, **9.6.7:** 20f.
- Information flows, **50.7:** 4, 6 f.
- Informative content, **50.7:** 4
- Informative, **9.6.9:** 27
- Informative, defined, **9.6.5:** 55
- Inherent balance, **9.6.4:** 15
- Injection quills, **7.8:** 14, 15f.
- Inlet (suction) pressure (p_s), definition and equation, **3.1-3.5:** 21, **3.6:** 6
- Inlet bell clearance C_f , **9.8:** 20
- Inlet bell design diameter (D), **9.8:** 42, 43f.–44f.
 - acceptable velocity ranges for, **9.8:** 43t.
 - inlet bell velocity, **9.8:** 42
- Inlet bell or volute diameter D_b , **9.8:** 20
- Inlet bell velocity, **9.8:** 42
- Inlet or target baffle, **9.8:** 82, 82f.
- Inlet stabilizers, **7.8:** 14
- Inlet system, **6.1-6.5:** 47–53
 - booster pumps, **6.1-6.5:** 53
 - connection of piping sections, **6.1-6.5:** 50f.
 - foot valve, **6.1-6.5:** 50
 - high points in piping system, **6.1-6.5:** 50
 - inlet line valve, **6.1-6.5:** 50
 - inlet piping diameters, **6.1-6.5:** 48, 50f.
 - inlet piping, **6.1-6.5:** 50
 - inlet pressure gauge, **6.1-6.5:** 53
 - liquid source features, **6.1-6.5:** 48
 - multiple-pump installations, **6.1-6.5:** 48
 - pulsation dampener, **6.1-6.5:** 54
 - screens or strainers, **6.1-6.5:** 50, 53f.
 - suction system relationships, **6.1-6.5:** 51f., 52f., 54
 - suction tanks, **6.1-6.5:** 48f., 54
- Inlet total head, definition, **40.6:** 15
- Inlet vacuum. See Inlet pressure
- Inlet, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 16
- Inner magnet assembly (driven), defined, **4.1-4.6:** 9, **5.1-5.6:** 17
- Inner rotor assembly, defined, **5.1-5.6:** 14
- Input data requirements, **9.6.8:** 64
 - for structural analysis (OH or BB pumps), **9.6.8:** 66
 - general information needed, **9.6.8:** 66
 - information required for a torsional rotordynamic analysis, **9.6.8:** 65
 - level 1 analysis, **9.6.8:** 64
 - level 2 and 3 analysis, **9.6.8:** 64
 - motor information for a lateral structural analysis (level 2), **9.6.8:** 66
 - motor information for a lateral structural analysis (level 3), **9.6.8:** 66
- Inside-adjustable lost-motion valve gear, **8.1-8.5:** 7f.
- Inside-fixed lost-motion valve gear, **8.1-8.5:** 7f.
- Inspection, **6.1-6.5:** 80
- Installation, **12.1-12.6:** 86, **4.1-4.6:** 21, **6.1-6.5:** 68, **8.1-8.5:** 15
 - access for maintenance, **3.1-3.5:** 55
 - alignment, **3.1-3.5:** 58
 - bearings, **6.1-6.5:** 73
 - belt guards, **3.1-3.5:** 60
 - cautions, **4.1-4.6:** 21
 - cleaning, **3.1-3.5:** 54
 - codes, **3.1-3.5:** 54
 - couplings, **3.1-3.5:** 58
 - drive alignment, **6.1-6.5:** 71
 - flanges and fittings, **6.1-6.5:** 69

Installation — *Continued*

- flexible coupling, **6.1-6.5**: 71
- forces and moments, **6.1-6.5**: 69
- foundation, **3.1-3.5**: 55
- gaskets, **6.1-6.5**: 71
- gear drive, **6.1-6.5**: 71
- grouting, **3.1-3.5**: 57, 57f.
- leveling the unit, **6.1-6.5**: 69
- leveling, **3.1-3.5**: 57, 57f.
- location, **3.1-3.5**: 55
- lubrication, **6.1-6.5**: 73
- manufacturer's instructions, **3.1-3.5**: 54
- mounting the driver, **3.1-3.5**: 56
- pipe dope and tape, **6.1-6.5**: 71
- piping, **3.1-3.5**: 60, **6.1-6.5**: 69
- piston rod packing, **6.1-6.5**: 73–78
- pressure relief valves, **3.1-3.5**: 62
- priming, **6.1-6.5**: 70
- protective devices, **3.1-3.5**: 63
- relief valve set pressure, **6.1-6.5**: 70, 70t.
- rotation check, **3.1-3.5**: 58
- special requirements, **4.1-4.6**: 21
- strainers, **3.1-3.5**: 62
- types of misalignment, **3.1-3.5**: 58f.
- V-belt drive, **6.1-6.5**: 71, 72t., 73f.
- V-belt sheaves and synchronous sprockets, **3.1-3.5**: 59, 60f.
- Installation alignment, **5.1-5.6**: 40
 - auxiliary connections, **5.1-5.6**: 41
 - caution notice, **5.1-5.6**: 39
 - coupling alignment (MDP), **5.1-5.6**: 40
 - foundation (CMP), **5.1-5.6**: 40
 - foundation (MDP), **5.1-5.6**: 39
 - leveling, **5.1-5.6**: 40
 - location and foundation, **5.1-5.6**: 39
- Installation section, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 16
 - air and vacuum release valves for wet-pit and well pumps, **2.4**: 23
 - air release valves for self-priming pumps, **1.4**: 20
 - alignment of gear couplings, **1.4**: 24
 - alignment of gear-type couplings, **1.4**: 24 f.
 - alignment of spacer couplings, **1.4**: 24
 - alignment of spacer-type couplings, **1.4**: 24 f.
 - alignment steps, **1.4**: 21
 - alignment, **1.4**: 21, **2.4**: 25
 - alignment, general, **1.4**: 21
 - angular misalignment, **1.4**: 22
 - assembly on site, **1.4**: 16, **2.4**: 16
 - auxiliary (driver, coupling, etc.), **2.4**: 25
 - baseplate, **1.4**: 17, **2.4**: 19
 - check valves, **1.4**: 21, **2.4**: 24
 - check valves, to prevent loss of prime, **1.4**: 21
 - check valves, used in series-parallel connections, **1.4**: 21
 - checking wells, **2.4**: 17
 - checking wet pits, **2.4**: 17
 - clear siphon of air, **1.4**: 20, **2.4**: 23
 - clearance setting, **1.4**: 21, **2.4**: 25
 - control, monitoring, and alarm equipment, **1.4**: 25, **2.4**: 28
 - coupling guard, **1.4**: 25
 - couplings for discharge pipe joints, **2.4**: 27
 - dial indicator method of alignment, **1.4**: 23, 23 f.
 - discharge valve expansion joint, **1.4**: 20 f.
 - discharge valves, **1.4**: 20, **2.4**: 23
 - driver coupling or clutch, **2.4**: 26
 - elbow at pump suction, **1.4**: 19, **2.4**: 22
 - electrical controls, **2.4**: 27
 - electrical splices and connections, **2.4**: 27
 - electrical, **1.4**: 25, **2.4**: 28
 - entrained air, **2.4**: 21
 - expansion joints and couplings, **1.4**: 18
 - factory support requirements, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 16
 - flexible coupling, defined, **1.4**: 22
 - flow inducers, **2.4**: 22
 - foundation, **1.4**: 16, **2.4**: 18
 - grouting, **1.4**: 18, **2.4**: 20
 - hot alignment considerations, **1.4**: 25, **2.4**: 28
 - installation of horizontal pumps, **1.4**: 21
 - laser method of alignment, **1.4**: 24
 - leveling, **1.4**: 17, **2.4**: 19
 - lightning and surge protection for submersible motors, **2.4**: 27
 - location, **1.4**: 16, **2.4**: 16
 - lubrication, priming, and cooling systems, **1.4**: 25, **2.4**: 28
 - maximum water temperature, **2.4**: 27
 - minimum required velocity, **2.4**: 27
 - nozzle loads, **1.4**: 21, **2.4**: 24
 - parallel alignment, checking, **1.4**: 22
 - parallel misalignment, **1.4**: 22
 - pipe reducers, **1.4**: 19, **2.4**: 22
 - pipe supports/anchors/joints, **1.4**: 18, **2.4**: 20
 - piping and connections, **1.4**: 18, **2.4**: 20
 - piping, general guidelines, **1.4**: 18, **2.4**: 20
 - ratio of reverse runaway operation speed (n_{ro}) to normal operation speed (n_{no}), **2.4**: 28
 - realignment, **1.4**: 21
 - reasons to install check valves, **2.4**: 24
 - reverse runaway speed, **1.4**: 26
 - rigging and lifting, **1.4**: 16, **2.4**: 19
 - seismic analysis, **1.4**: 16, **2.4**: 19
 - shaft/coupling alignment, **1.4**: 22
 - siphon breaker, **1.4**: 20, **2.4**: 23
 - siphons, **1.4**: 20, **2.4**: 23
 - soft foot, causes, **1.4**: 22
 - soft foot, defined, **1.4**: 22
 - special couplings, **1.4**: 25
 - special driver considerations for submersible units (type VS0), **2.4**: 26
 - speed versus torque requirements, **2.4**: 27
 - steady bushing, **2.4**: 26
 - stopping unit/reverse runaway speed, **2.4**: 28
 - straightedge alignment tools, **1.4**: 22

Installation section — *Continued*

- straightedge method of alignment, **1.4:** 22
- strainers, **1.4:** 21, **2.4:** 25
- submersible motor selection, **2.4:** 27
- suction piping failure, **2.4:** 21
- suction piping requirements, **1.4:** 18, **2.4:** 21
- suction pressure below atmospheric pressure, **2.4:** 21
- suction tanks, **1.4:** 19, **2.4:** 22
- suction valves and manifolds, **1.4:** 19, **2.4:** 22
- tie rods, **1.4:** 18
- tie rods, total axial rigidity, **1.4:** 18
- types of cable for submersible motors, **2.4:** 27
- typical foundation bolt design, **1.4:** 17 f.
- V-belt drive, **1.4:** 25
- vertical hollow shaft drivers, **2.4:** 26
- vertical solid shaft drivers, **2.4:** 25
- water hammer, **2.4:** 24
- Installation under submerged conditions, **40.6:** 17
- Installation, operation, and maintenance manual reference information, **1.4:** 4, **2.4:** 4
- Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, **5.1-5.6:** 47
- Instructions for determining pump performance on a viscous liquid when performance on water is known, **9.6.7:** 8
- Instrument calibration interval, **3.6:** 25, 26 t., **6.6:** 23, 23t., **14.6:** 65, 65 t.
- Instrumentation, **7.6:** 8, **9.6.4:** 3, **11.6:** 35
 - rate of flow measurement, **11.6:** 37
 - calibration intervals, **11.6:** 37
 - fluctuation and accuracy, **7.6:** 8
 - head measurement, **11.6:** 40
 - magnetic flowmeters, **11.6:** 40
 - maximum permissible short-term speed fluctuation, **11.6:** 43
 - measurement of head by means of gauges, **11.6:** 42, 43f.
 - measurement uncertainty, **11.6:** 35
 - methods of rotary speed measurement, **11.6:** 42
 - objective, **11.6:** 35
 - orifice plate calibration, **11.6:** 39
 - other methods of flow rate measurement, **11.6:** 40
 - Pitot tubes, **11.6:** 39
 - pressure differential flowmeter types, **11.6:** 38
 - pressure tap locations, **11.6:** 40
 - pump input power measurement, **11.6:** 42
 - rate of flow measurement by pressure differential meter, **11.6:** 38, 38 t., 39t.
 - rate of flow measurement by weirs, **11.6:** 39
 - rate of flow measurements from noncontact-type flowmeters, **11.6:** 40
 - rate of flow measurements from rotating-type flowmeters, **11.6:** 39
 - requirements for static pressure taps, **11.6:** 40f.
 - straight pipe downstream of pressure tap of nozzle or orifice plate meter, **11.6:** 39 t.
 - straight pipe required before nozzle or orifice plate, **11.6:** 38t.
 - straight pipe required before venturi meter, **11.6:** 38t.
 - temperature measurement and instruments, **11.6:** 43
 - ultrasonic flowmeters, **11.6:** 40
- Intake design, **1.3:** 83, **2.3:** 42
- Intake structure
 - for clear liquid see clear liquid, intake structures for designing, **9.8:** 9–10
- Integral motors (CMP) cooling, **5.1-5.6:** 23
 - explosionproof, **5.1-5.6:** 23
 - external cooling requirements, **5.1-5.6:** 23
- Intended audience, **50.7:** 3
 - additional data to support data sheet, **50.7:** 14
 - and HI-EDE implementation, **50.7:** 20
 - data sheet, **50.7:** 8, 9 f.
 - ISO 13709 Standard for Centrifugal Pumps for Petroleum, Petrochemical and Natural Gas Industries, **50.7:** 1, 3, 8
 - ISO 8879 Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML), **50.7:** 2
 - See also R/D/S/A compliance
- Intermittent service, **2.3:** 39
- Internal bearings
 - active magnetic bearing systems, **5.1-5.6:** 23
 - auxiliary bearing system for magnetic bearings, **5.1-5.6:** 23
 - design considerations, **5.1-5.6:** 22
 - filtration of bearing lubricating liquid, **5.1-5.6:** 22
 - materials, **5.1-5.6:** 22
- Internal clearance factors, **20.3:** 2
- Internal gear pumps, **3.1-3.5:** 5f., 6f.
 - applications, **3.1-3.5:** 10
 - close coupled, **3.1-3.5:** 25f
 - description, **3.1-3.5:** 10
 - flange mounting, **3.1-3.5:** 24f.
 - foot mounting, **3.1-3.5:** 24f.
 - frame mounting, **3.1-3.5:** 25f.
 - pinion-drive type, **3.1-3.5:** 10f.
 - pump range, **3.1-3.5:** 10f.
 - with crescent, **3.1-3.5:** 14f.
 - without crescent, **3.1-3.5:** 14f.
- Internal sleeve bearings, **4.1-4.6:** 14
- International Organization for Standards, **5.1-5.6:** 48
- Intrinsic induction, defined, **4.1-4.6:** 9
- Introduction and safety section, **1.4:** 4, **2.4:** 4
 - applying heat to disassemble pump, **1.4:** 6, **2.4:** 6
 - ATEX Certification, **1.4:** 8
 - ATEX example markings, **1.4:** 8
 - avoiding excessive surface temperatures, **1.4:** 9, **2.4:** 9
 - correct lubrication, **1.4:** 7, **2.4:** 7
 - drain pump, **1.4:** 6, **2.4:** 6
 - dry pump, **1.4:** 7, **2.4:** 7
 - electrical safety symbol, **1.4:** 4, **2.4:** 4
 - Ex rating, **1.4:** 8
 - excessive external pipe load, **1.4:** 7, **2.4:** 7
 - explanation of designations (safety terminology and symbols), **1.4:** 4), **2.4:** 4
 - explosive atmosphere zone symbol, **1.4:** 5, **2.4:** 5

- fluoro-elastomers, **1.4:** 6, **2.4:** 6
- general guidelines, **1.4:** 5, **2.4:** 5
- guard removal, **2.4:** 6
- guards, **1.4:** 6
- handling components, **1.4:** 6, **2.4:** 6
- hazardous and toxic fluid safety symbol, **1.4:** 5, **2.4:** 5
- hazardous liquids, **1.4:** 7, **2.4:** 7
- hot and cold parts, **1.4:** 7, **2.4:** 7
- important instruction symbol, **1.4:** 5, **2.4:** 5
- leakage prevention, **1.4:** 10
- legal requirement, **1.4:** 4, **2.4:** 4
- lock out - tag out, **1.4:** 6
- maintenance plan and schedule, **1.4:** 11, **2.4:** 11
- maintenance to avoid risk of explosion, **1.4:** 11, **2.4:** 11
- marking and approvals, **1.4:** 4, **2.4:** 4
- marking, **1.4:** 8, **2.4:** 8
- material safety data sheet (MSDS), **1.4:** 11, **2.4:** 11
- noise level data, **1.4:** 11, **2.4:** 11
- personnel qualification and training, **1.4:** 5, **2.4:** 5
- power connection, **2.4:** 6
- preventing buildup of explosive mixtures, **1.4:** 10, **2.4:** 10
- preventing leakage, **2.4:** 10
- preventing sparks, **2.4:** 10
- products used in potentially explosive atmospheres, **1.4:** 8, **2.4:** 8
- proper filling and venting, **1.4:** 10
- pump at reduced speed, **1.4:** 7
- pump outside allowable operating region, **1.4:** 7
- rigging and lifting, **1.4:** 12, **2.4:** 12
- risk to safe operation and personal safety symbol, **1.4:** 5
- running continuously, **2.4:** 7
- safety action, **1.4:** 6, **2.4:** 6
- safety instruction symbol, **1.4:** 4, **2.4:** 4
- safety labels, **1.4:** 5, **2.4:** 5
- safety, **1.4:** 4
- scope of compliance, **1.4:** 8, **2.4:** 8
- spark prevention, **1.4:** 10
- starting at reduced speed, **2.4:** 7
- suction valves, **1.4:** 7, **2.4:** 7
- summary of conditions and actions, **2.4:** 6
- temperature classes, **1.4:** 9, **2.4:** 9
- thermal shock, **1.4:** 6, **2.4:** 6
- Irons, **12.1-12.6:** 67
- ISO 2858 (baseplates), **1.3:** 101, 102f.
- ISO 5199 (impellers), **1.3:** 35
- Isolation shut-off valve, **7.8:** 13
- Items utilized, **7.6:** 8
- Jacketed pump, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 18
- Job-specific motor reed frequency tested values for dynamic analysis, **9.6.8:** 83
- K_A . See Axial thrust factor (K_A)
- Keys and keyways, **9.6.4:** 16
 - maintenance inspection of, **9.6.5:** 25
- K_h . See Pressure gradient factor (K_h)
- L*. See Stroke
- Laminar region, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 42
- Lantern rings, **12.1-12.6:** 71–73
 - defined, **3.1-3.5:** 18
 - materials, **12.1-12.6:** 74
- Large motor mounting plate structure, **9.6.8:** 81f.
- Lateral critical speed analysis for OH or BB pumps, **9.6.8:** 30
- Lateral forced response analysis of OH or BB pumps, **9.6.8:** 53
 - analysis, **9.6.8:** 54
 - interpretation of results, **9.6.8:** 54
 - model, **9.6.8:** 54
 - validation, **9.6.8:** 54
- Lateral forced response analysis of VS pumps, **9.6.8:** 54
- Lateral rotordynamic analyses, **9.6.8:** 44
 - analysis, **9.6.8:** 45
 - defined, **9.6.8:** 60
 - methodology, **9.6.8:** 44
 - model, **9.6.8:** 45
 - validation, **9.6.8:** 46
- Lateral structural analysis, defined, **9.6.8:** 60
- Lateral vibration, defined, **9.6.8:** 60
- Leak detection, **7.8:** 7
- Leakage monitoring, **9.6.5:** 10, **9.6.9:** 9, 10t.
 - application guidelines for seal monitoring, **9.6.9:** 10t.
 - application guidelines, **9.6.5:** 12t.
 - by catch tank, **9.6.9:** 10, 10t.
 - by change in barrier fluid flow, **9.6.5:** 11, 12t. , **9.6.9:** 10, 10t.
 - by pressure buildup, **9.6.5:** 11, 12t., **9.6.9:** 10t.
 - by visual inspection, **9.6.5:** 10, 12t.
 - condition indicators, **9.6.9:** 25t.
 - control limits, **9.6.9:** 10
 - frequency, **9.6.9:** 5t., 10
 - in double-walled systems, **9.6.5:** 11
 - in submersible pumps, **9.6.5:** 10
 - means of monitoring, **9.6.5:** 10, **9.6.9:** 9, 10t.
 - sniffer inspection, **9.6.9:** 9, 10t.
 - visual inspection, **9.6.9:** 9, 10t.
- Letter (dimensional) designations, **3.1-3.5:** 23
- Letter designations, **12.1-12.6:** 27
 - for direct drive pump and motor assembly dimensions, **12.1-12.6:** 29f.
 - for horizontal pump dimensions, **12.1-12.6:** 28f.
 - for vertical pump dimensions, **12.1-12.6:** 30f.
- Level 1 analysis (simple methods), **9.6.8:** 36
- Level 1 analysis methods, **9.6.8:** 37
 - recommended, **9.6.8:** 36
- Level 2 analysis (intermediate methods), **9.6.8:** 44
- Level 2 analysis introduction, **9.6.8:** 44
 - methodology, interpretation of results and validation, **9.6.8:** 44
- Level 3 analyses
 - lateral rotordynamic analyses, **9.6.8:** 53
 - methodology, interpretation of results and validation, **9.6.8:** 53

- Level 3 analysis (advanced methods), **9.6.8**: 53
 - introduction, **9.6.8**: 53
 - lateral rotordynamic analysis, **9.6.8**: 53
 - structural analyses, **9.6.8**: 53
 - torsional rotordynamic analyses, **9.6.8**: 53
- Level A, **3.6**: 1, 8, 16
 - acceptable deviation of dependent test quantities from specified values for Type III and Type IV testing, **3.6**: 8
 - acceptable deviation of independent test quantities from specified values at the test parameters, **3.6**: 8
 - reports, **3.6**: 16
- Level B, **3.6**: 8, 16, 17 f.
 - acceptable deviation of dependent test quantities from specified values for Type III and Type IV testing, **3.6**: 8
 - acceptable deviation of independent test quantities from specified values at the test information data sheet, **3.6**: 16, 17 f.
 - parameters, **3.6**: 8
 - reports, **3.6**: 16
- Level control NPSH test with deep sump supply, **6.6**: 15f.
- Leveling and grouting, **3.1-3.5**: 57f.
- Levels of analysis
 - by methodology, **9.6.8**: 6
 - See also Analysis levels
- Life cost optimization, **9.1-9.5**: 6
- Life cycle cost evaluation, **4.1-4.6**: 19
- Limitations of the correction method, **9.6.7**: 25
 - mechanical considerations, **9.6.7**: 25
 - sealing issues, **9.6.7**: 25
 - sealless pumps, **9.6.7**: 27
- Linear polarization resistance (LPR), **9.6.5**: 9
- Linear stiffness k defined, **9.6.8**: 41
- Lined type, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 4
- Line-shaft design sump pump (VS4), **2.1-2.2**: 9 f.
- Line-shaft horsepower loss due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
- Link to HI-EDE data dictionary, **50.7**: 31
- Link to HI-EDE units of measure, **50.7**: 31
- Liquid
 - classification, **4.1-4.6**: 17
 - lubricating, **4.1-4.6**: 17
 - nonlubricating, **4.1-4.6**: 17
 - pumped liquid characteristics, **4.1-4.6**: 20
- Liquid bypass, **6.1-6.5**: 44, 45f.
- Liquid end, **8.1-8.5**: 2f., 3
 - cylinder liner, **6.1-6.5**: 6, 9f.
 - defined, **5.1-5.6**: 14
 - gland, **6.1-6.5**: 13, 14f.
 - lantern ring (seal cage), **6.1-6.5**: 14, 14f.
 - liquid cylinder, **6.1-6.5**: 6, 9f.
 - manifolds, **6.1-6.5**: 6, 11f.
 - packing, **6.1-6.5**: 13, 14f.
 - parts, **6.1-6.5**: 6, 7f., 8f., 9f., 10t., 11f.
 - piston, **6.1-6.5**: 12, 12f.
 - plunger, **6.1-6.5**: 2f., 13, 13f.
 - stuffing box, **6.1-6.5**: 13f., 13
 - upper crosshead, **6.1-6.5**: 6f., 14
 - valve assembly, **6.1-6.5**: 14, 14f.
 - valve chest cover, **6.1-6.5**: 6, 9f.
 - valve plate (check valve), **6.1-6.5**: 11f., 12
- Liquid end assembly, defined, **1.1-1.2**: 41, 41 f., **7.8**: 2
- Liquid expansion factor, **6.1-6.5**: 62, 64f.
- Liquid film bearings, temperature monitoring, **9.6.5**: 7
- Liquid film, **9.6.9**: 7
- Liquid flashing, **9.6.9**: 8
- Liquid gap, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Liquid horsepower. See Pump output power
- Liquid level, **9.8**: 51
- Liquid properties, **4.1-4.6**: 15
 - entrained air or gas, **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - high viscosity, **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - liquid vapor pressure, **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - low viscosity, **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - lubricating liquid, **4.1-4.6**: 17
 - nonlubricating liquid, **4.1-4.6**: 17
 - particles, **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - specific gravity, **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - specific heat, **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - variable viscosity, **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - viscosity, **4.1-4.6**: 15
- Liquid temperature limits on end suction pumps, **1.3**: 83, 4t.
 - and minimum flow, **1.3**: 79
 - calculation, **1.3**: 78
 - Liquid temperature rise, **1.3**: 78
- Liquid vapor pressure, **4.1-4.6**: 16
- Liquid viscosity
 - hydraulic and power losses, **2.3**: 50
- Liquids, **9.1-9.5**: 6
 - chemical symbols, **9.1-9.5**: 6
 - defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
 - effect of dissolved gas only in saturated solution on rate of flow of rotary pumps (metric units), **3.1-3.5**: 36f.
 - effect of dissolved gas only in saturated solution on rate of flow of rotary pumps (US customary units), **3.1-3.5**: 36f.
 - effect of entrained gas only on rate of flow (metric units), **3.1-3.5**: 35f.
 - effect of entrained gas only on rate of flow (US customary units), **3.1-3.5**: 35f.
 - effects of temperature and concentration, **9.1-9.5**: 6
 - entrained or dissolved gases, **3.1-3.5**: 34
 - factors affecting material selection, **9.1-9.5**: 6
 - general characteristics, **9.1-9.5**: 6
 - handling high or low temperature liquids, **9.1-9.5**: 6
 - identification and properties, **3.1-3.5**: 34
 - pumped, and monitoring of temperature rise, **9.6.5**: 7
 - specific gravity, **9.1-9.5**: 6
 - temperature-sensitive, and temperature monitoring, **9.6.5**: 6
- Lobe pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 1f., 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f., 30f.

- Lobe pumps — *Continued*
 - configurations, **3.1-3.5**: 9
 - description, **3.1-3.5**: 9
 - range chart, **3.1-3.5**: 9f.
 - single-lobe pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 14f.
 - three-lobe pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 14f.
- Locked rotor torque, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 16
- Locked-rotor torque ratings, **6.1-6.5**: 47t., 47
- Log decrement, defined, **9.6.8**: 60
- Logo and mark
 - claims to approval, **40.7**: 11
 - display areas, **40.7**: 15
 - display of Certificate of Pump Laboratory Approval, **40.7**: 11
 - failure to renew participation, **40.7**: 13
 - licensing agreement, **40.7**: 15
 - language requirements, **40.7**: 13
 - positioning, **40.7**: 14
 - provision and use of, **40.7**: 12
 - rectangular, **40.7**: 14 f.
 - referencing program, **40.7**: 11
 - reproduction of, **40.7**: 11
 - signage, **40.7**: 11
 - square, **40.7**: 13 f.
 - use of, **40.7**: 11, 15
 - visual element requirements, **40.7**: 13
- Lomakin effect, defined, **9.6.8**: 60
- LPR. *See* Linear polarization resistance
- I_s . *See* Static suction lift
- Lube piping, **2.3**: 65
- Lubricant analysis, **9.6.5**: 16
 - and abrasives, **9.6.5**: 18
 - and acidity, **9.6.5**: 18
 - and antioxidants, **9.6.5**: 18
 - and debris, **9.6.5**: 18
 - and dirt, **9.6.5**: 18
 - and fibers, **9.6.5**: 18
 - and lubricant analysis laboratories, **9.6.5**: 17
 - and particle counting, **9.6.5**: 16, 18
 - and spectrographic analysis, **9.6.5**: 16
 - and viscosity, **9.6.5**: 18
 - and water, **9.6.5**: 18
 - control limits, **9.6.5**: 18
 - evaluating wear rates, **9.6.5**: 17
 - inorganic contamination of lubricant, **9.6.5**: 17–18
 - measuring contamination of lubricant, **9.6.5**: 17
 - measuring lubricant degradation, **9.6.5**: 18
 - measuring metal particles from wear, **9.6.5**: 16–17
 - organic contamination of lubricant, **9.6.5**: 17
 - sampling techniques, **9.6.5**: 18
- Lubrication or cooling loss, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Lubrication, **8.1-8.5**: 18
 - defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Magnet (permanent), defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10
- Magnet assembly, **4.1-4.6**: 14
- Magnet component temperature factors, **5.1-5.6**: 38
- Magnet drive pump
 - maximum temperature limits, **5.1-5.6**: 38, 38t.
- Magnet materials, **4.1-4.6**: 15, 18
- Magnet, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 17
- Magnetic coupling
 - defined, **5.1-5.6**: 17
 - types, **5.1-5.6**: 18
- Magnetic coupling pumps. *See* Sealless, magnetically driven rotary pumps
- Magnetic coupling, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10
- Magnetic couplings (MDP)
 - caution in assembling or disassembling drive unit, **5.1-5.6**: 24
 - coating of outer magnet carrier, **5.1-5.6**: 24
 - heat removal by pumped liquid, **5.1-5.6**: 24
- Magnetic couplings decoupling of, **9.6.9**: 5, 7, 9
 - weakening of at elevated temperatures, **9.6.9**: 8
- Magnetic drive configurations, **4.1-4.6**: 1, 2f., 3 f., 4 f.
- Magnetic drive pump (MDP), **5.1-5.6**: 2
 - close couple, cantilevered stationary shaft, **5.1-5.6**: 8f.
 - close couple, in-line, fully supported stationary shaft, **5.1-5.6**: 10f.
 - close coupled, end suction, **5.1-5.6**: 3
 - close coupled, in-line, **5.1-5.6**: 3
 - cover-mounted magnetic drive housing submersible design, **5.1-5.6**: 54
 - flexibly coupled, end suction, **5.1-5.6**: 3
 - flexibly coupled, in-line, **5.1-5.6**: 3
 - flexibly coupled, rotating shaft, **5.1-5.6**: 7f.
 - multistage end suction design, **5.1-5.6**: 54
 - multistage, **5.1-5.6**: 58f.
 - self-priming end suction design, **5.1-5.6**: 55
 - self-priming, **5.1-5.6**: 60f.
 - vertical submerged, **5.1-5.6**: 3
 - vertical submerged, cover-mounted magnetic coupling housing, **5.1-5.6**: 59f.
 - vertical submerged, submersed magnetic coupling housing, **5.1-5.6**: 9f.
- Magnetic drive pumps. *See* Sealless, magnetically driven rotary pumps
- Magnetic flowmeters, in rate-of-flow monitoring, **9.6.5**: 19
- Magnetic materials, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10
- Magnetically coupled rotary pumps. *See* Sealless, magnetically driven rotary pumps
- Magnets
 - assembly of parts (caution), **4.1-4.6**: 25
 - demagnetization, **4.1-4.6**: 25
 - handling (cautions), **4.1-4.6**: 26
 - humidity effects, **4.1-4.6**: 25
 - temperature limits, **4.1-4.6**: 24
- Main drive (steam) slide valve, **8.1-8.5**: 6
- Main drive (steam) valves, **8.1-8.5**: 6, 6f.
 - setting (duplex pumps), **8.1-8.5**: 26
 - setting (simplex pumps), **8.1-8.5**: 27
- Maintenance considerations (metering pumps)
 - backup systems, **7.8**: 12
 - equipment access, **7.8**: 12
- Maintenance inspection, **9.6.5**: 24

- Maintenance inspection — *Continued*
 for coupling failure, **9.6.5:** 24, 25
 for erosion, **9.6.5:** 24, 26
 for hydraulic performance, **9.6.5:** 24, 27
 for shaft bending fatigue, **9.6.5:** 25, 26
 for shaft breakage, **9.6.5:** 25, 26
 for shaft torsional fatigue, **9.6.5:** 25, 26
 for shaft torsional overload, **9.6.5:** 25, 26
 frequency, **9.6.5:** 27
 of coupling flexible elements, **9.6.5:** 25
 of keys and keyways, **9.6.5:** 25
- Maintenance section, **1.4:** 31, **2.4:** 36
 acceptance criteria and dimensions, **1.4:** 34, **2.4:** 39
 auxiliary equipment, **1.4:** 35, **2.4:** 40
 clearances, **2.4:** 39
 cold weather maintenance, **1.4:** 32, **2.4:** 37
 consumables, **1.4:** 33, **2.4:** 38
 fastener torques, rotation direction, and sequence, **1.4:** 34, **2.4:** 38
 guide, **2.4:** 36
 inspection, **2.4:** 39
 pump clearances, **1.4:** 35
 pump decontamination, **1.4:** 34, **2.4:** 38
 pump disassembly, **1.4:** 34, **2.4:** 39
 pump inspection, **1.4:** 34
 pump reassembly, **1.4:** 35, **2.4:** 39
 required tools and fixtures, **1.4:** 33
 schedule, **1.4:** 31, **2.4:** 36
 shaft straightening, **1.4:** 35, **2.4:** 39
 spare parts list, **1.4:** 33
 spare parts, continuous service, **2.4:** 37
 spare parts, intermittent service, **2.4:** 37
 spare parts, recommended, **2.4:** 37
 suggested guide, **1.4:** 31
 tools and fixtures required, **2.4:** 38
 wear rings, **2.4:** 37
 wear/parts replacements, **1.4:** 32
- Maintenance, **3.1-3.5:** 65, **4.1-4.6:** 25, **5.1-5.6:** 42, **12.1-12.6:** 95
 assembly of magnetic parts (caution), **4.1-4.6:** 25
 canned motor pump, **5.1-5.6:** 43
 close running fits, **5.1-5.6:** 43
 dismantling or reassembling a magnetically driven pump, **5.1-5.6:** 43
 draining containment shell, **4.1-4.6:** 25
 factory repair return or transport procedure, **5.1-5.6:** 43
 frequency of inspection, **4.1-4.6:** 26
 handling magnets (cautions), **4.1-4.6:** 26
 hard irons, **12.1-12.6:** 95
 impellers, **12.1-12.6:** 95
 inspection schedule, **5.1-5.6:** 43
 mechanical seals, **3.1-3.5:** 66
 out of service procedure, **5.1-5.6:** 42
 packing installation, **3.1-3.5:** 66
 periodic lubrication, **3.1-3.5:** 65
 preventive, **3.1-3.5:** 65
 review of parts when disassembled, **4.1-4.6:** 26
 sideliners, **12.1-12.6:** 95
 spare parts, **3.1-3.5:** 66
 special tools, **3.1-3.5:** 66
 troubleshooting, **5.1-5.6:** 43
- Malfunction causes and remedies, **6.1-6.5:** 80, 81t.–83t. , **8.1-8.5:** 27, 28t.
- Malfunctions, **3.1-3.5:** 66
 causes and remedies, **3.1-3.5:** 67t.
- Manuals describing installation, operation, and maintenance of rotodynamic centrifugal pumps, **1.4:** 1
 applicable pump types, **1.4:** 1
 application to IOM manuals, **1.4:** 1
 introduction, **1.4:** 1
 scope, **1.4:** 1
 standard outline for writing IOM manuals, **1.4:** 1
- Manuals describing installation, operation, and maintenance of rotodynamic vertical pumps, **2.4:** 1
 applicable pump types, **2.4:** 1
 application to IOM manuals, **2.4:** 1
 introduction, **2.4:** 1
 scope, **2.4:** 1
 standard outline for IOM manuals, **2.4:** 1
- Manufacturer's standard production test, **7.6:** 7, **11.6:** 5
- Market considerations
 building trades and HVAC, **9.6.8:** 19t.
 chemical industry, **9.6.8:** 22t.
 drainage and dewatering, **9.6.8:** 24t.
 electric power industry, **9.6.8:** 20t.
 fire, **9.6.8:** 25t.
 flood control, **9.6.8:** 25t.
 general industry, **9.6.8:** 23t.
 irrigation, **9.6.8:** 24t.
 municipal water and wastewater, **9.6.8:** 18t.
 petroleum industry, **9.6.8:** 21t.
 pulp and paper, **9.6.8:** 22t.
 slurry, **9.6.8:** 23t.
 water transport, **9.6.8:** 26t.
- Market trends, **9.6.8:** 17t.
- Martensitic stainless steels, **12.1-12.6:** 67
- Mass elastic data, defined, **9.6.8:** 60
- Mass elastic modeling, defined, **9.6.8:** 60
- Material selection
 responsibilities of purchaser and manufacturer, **5.1-5.6:** 37
- Materials, **4.1-4.6:** 18
 and corrosion, **5.1-5.6:** 24
 and welding, **5.1-5.6:** 25
 chemical and physical certifications, **5.1-5.6:** 25
- Materials hardness, **3.1-3.5:** 45f.
- Maximum allowable casing pressure, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 20
- Maximum allowable casing working pressure, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 37
- Maximum allowable continuous speed [$n_{max\ all}$], defined, **1.1-1.2:** 68, **2.1-2.2:** 31
- Maximum allowable flow [$Q_{max\ all}$], defined, **1.1-1.2:** 68

- Maximum allowable flow [$Q_{max\ all}$], defined, **2.1-2.2**: 31
- Maximum allowable inlet (suction) pressure, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 21
- Maximum allowable inlet working pressure, defined, **3.6**: 6
- Maximum allowable working pressure (MAWP), defined, **1.1-1.2**: 73, **2.1-2.2**: 37, **7.8**: 3
- Maximum discharge pressure [$p_{d\ max}$ or $p_{2\ max\ op}$], defined, **2.1-2.2**: 37
- Maximum suction pressure ($p_{s\ max}$) [$p_{1\ max\ op}$ or $p_{1\ max\ all}$], defined, **1.1-1.2**: 72, **2.1-2.2**: 35
- Maximum differential pressure (Δp_{max}), defined, **3.1-3.5**: 21, **3.6**: 6
- Maximum flow, **2.3**: 41
 operation above BEP, **2.3**: 41
- Maximum particle size, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 40
- Maximum pump input power, **14.6**: 12
- Maximum pump motor unit input power, **11.6**: 6, **14.6**: 12
- Maximum required net positive suction head, **11.6**: 6, **14.6**: 12
- Maximum suction pressure, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 36
- Maximum value of deposit velocity (V_{smax}), **12.1-12.6**: 50, 49f.
 defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41
- Maximum working pressure, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10, **5.1-5.6**: 18
- Maxwell, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10
- MDP precautions, **5.1-5.6**: 39
 piping, **5.1-5.6**: 40
 power monitors, **5.1-5.6**: 41
 receipt of pump unit, **5.1-5.6**: 39
- MDP. See Magnetic drive pump, **5.1-5.6**: 2
- Mean effective particle diameter (d50), **12.1-12.6**: 39t.
 defined, **12.1-12.6**: 39
- Measurement
 locations and directions, **9.6.4**: 4, 5 f.
 probes, **9.6.4**: 3
- Measurement equipment for deep-well pumps, **14.6**: 64
 differential pressure devices (flow rate), **14.6**: 61
 electronic pressure transducers, **14.6**: 60
 for electric power measurements, **14.6**: 63
 for electromagnetic method (flow rate), **14.6**: 62
 for flow rate, **14.6**: 61
 for head, **14.6**: 60
 for motor pump unit overall efficiency, **14.6**: 64
 for motor pump units with common axial bearing, **14.6**: 64
 for pump power input, **14.6**: 63
 for pumps with inaccessible ends, **14.6**: 63
 for rotating speed, **14.6**: 60
 for torque measurement, **14.6**: 63
 for tracer and other methods (flow rate), **14.6**: 62
 for ultrasonic method (flow rate), **14.6**: 62
 for velocity area methods (flow rate), **14.6**: 62
 for volumetric method (flow rate), **14.6**: 61
 for weighing method (flow rate), **14.6**: 61
 special cases, **14.6**: 63
 spring pressure gauges, **14.6**: 60, 60 f.
 thin-plate weirs (flow rate), **14.6**: 62
 turbine meters (flow rate), **14.6**: 62
- Measurement equipment, **40.6**: 22
 arrangement for determination of reference plane of spring pressure gauges, **40.6**: 22 f.
 differential pressure flow measurement devices, **40.6**: 23
 electromagnetic method, **40.6**: 23
 electronic pressure transducers, **40.6**: 22
 for measurement of flow rate, **40.6**: 23
 for measurement of head, **40.6**: 22
 for measurement of rotating speed, **40.6**: 22
 manometers, **40.6**: 22
 spring pressure gauges, **40.6**: 22
 thin-plate weirs, **40.6**: 23
 turbine meters, **40.6**: 24
 ultrasonic method, **40.6**: 24
 velocity area methods, **40.6**: 23
- Measurement of airborne sound, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 airborne sound level test report, **9.1-9.5**: 41 f.
 application of standard, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 calculation and interpretation of readings, **9.1-9.5**: 39
 cause of errors, **9.1-9.5**: 38
 graphic plot of octave-band data, **9.1-9.5**: 40
 instrumentation, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 measurement technique, **9.1-9.5**: 38
 measurements to be taken, **9.1-9.5**: 38
 microphone locations, **9.1-9.5**: 29
 observer and measuring instrument distance, **9.1-9.5**: 38
 operation of pumping equipment, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 precautions in test setup, **9.1-9.5**: 39
 presentation of data, **9.1-9.5**: 40
 purpose of standard, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 tabulation of test data, **9.1-9.5**: 40
 test environment, **9.1-9.5**: 28
 test report, **9.1-9.5**: 40
 time period, **9.1-9.5**: 38
- Measurement of pump power input, **40.6**: 24
 calculation from torque, **40.6**: 24
 torque, **40.6**: 24
- Mechanical losses, **9.6.7**: 18
- Mechanical problems, **9.6.4**: 17
- Mechanical processes in pumping, **9.1-9.5**: 12
 crevice corrosion, **9.1-9.5**: 12
 thermal or hydraulic shock, **9.1-9.5**: 12
 velocity effects, **9.1-9.5**: 12
- Mechanical safety considerations, **4.1-4.6**: 19
- Mechanical seal faces, **9.6.9**: 7
- Mechanical seal, defined, **1.4**: 28, **3.1-3.5**: 18
- Mechanical seals, **2.3**: 20, **9.6.7**: 25, **12.1-12.6**: 77
 and API Plan 02, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 and API Plan 11, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 and API Plan 32, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 and API Plan 52, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 and API Plan 53, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 and API Plan 54, **12.1-12.6**: 84

Mechanical seals — *Continued*

- and API Plan 62, **12.1-12.6:** 85
 - and quenches, **12.1-12.6:** 79
 - and water quality, **12.1-12.6:** 84, 84t.
 - barrier fluid, **12.1-12.6:** 38
 - buffer fluid, **12.1-12.6:** 38, 79
 - carbon graphite, **12.1-12.6:** 85
 - classified by arrangement, **2.3:** 20 f.
 - classified by design, **2.3:** 21 f.
 - dual pressurized seals, **12.1-12.6:** 38, 79–80, 80f.
 - dual seals, **12.1-12.6:** 37
 - dual unpressurized seals, **12.1-12.6:** 38
 - external flush fluid, **12.1-12.6:** 38
 - flow rates required to create 4.6 m/s velocity past pushing, **12.1-12.6:** 79, 78f.
 - flush arrangements, **12.1-12.6:** 84–85
 - for heavy-duty slurry pumps, **12.1-12.6:** 79, 79f.
 - heavy-duty pusher seals, **12.1-12.6:** 81, 82f.
 - losses due to viscosity, **2.3:** 51
 - materials, **12.1-12.6:** 85
 - nonpusher seals, **12.1-12.6:** 37
 - nonpusher split seals, **12.1-12.6:** 82, 83f.
 - pusher seals, **12.1-12.6:** 37
 - pusher split seals, **12.1-12.6:** 82
 - secondary seals, **12.1-12.6:** 38
 - silicon carbide, **12.1-12.6:** 85
 - single seals, **12.1-12.6:** 77–79
 - single seals, application limits of, **12.1-12.6:** 79, 77t.
 - single seals, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 38
 - single-spring elastomeric bellows seals, **12.1-12.6:** 80, 81f.
 - specialty designs, **12.1-12.6:** 84, 83f.
 - terminology, **12.1-12.6:** 37–38
 - tungsten carbide, **12.1-12.6:** 85
- Mechanical test acceptance criteria, **14.6:** 47
- instrumentation, **14.6:** 46
 - objective, **14.6:** 46
 - operating conditions, **14.6:** 46
 - procedure, **14.6:** 47
 - records, **14.6:** 48
 - setup, **14.6:** 46
 - temperature instruments, **14.6:** 47
 - vibration instruments, **14.6:** 46
- Metallic-type piston packing, **8.1-8.5:** 22
- application, **8.1-8.5:** 22
 - clearance, **8.1-8.5:** 23
 - joints, **8.1-8.5:** 21f., 23
 - liquid piston ring pack, **8.1-8.5:** 22f.
 - material, **8.1-8.5:** 23
 - maximum temperature for ring materials, **8.1-8.5:** 23t.
- Metals, **12.1-12.6:** 66
- Metering pumps, **7.6:** 9
- acceleration pressure, **7.8:** 6
 - accessories, **7.8:** 12–16
 - characteristics, **7.8:** 4
 - net positive suction head available (NPSHA)/net positive inlet pressure available (NPIPA), **7.8:** 4–6

Meters

- for measuring power, **9.6.9:** 6
 - for measuring rate of flow, **9.6.9:** 13
 - for measuring speed (rpm), **9.6.9:** 14
- Method for estimating net positive suction head required (NPSH3), **9.6.7:** 21
- cautionary statement, **9.6.7:** 21
 - example (metric units), **9.6.7:** 22
 - example (US customary units), **9.6.7:** 24
 - example calculations (metric units), **9.6.7:** 23t.
 - example calculations (US customary units), **9.6.7:** 24t.
 - example NPSH3 chart (metric units), **9.6.7:** 23f.
 - example NPSH3 chart (US customary units), **9.6.7:** 24f.
 - suction inlet geometry variable A, **9.6.7:** 22
- Methods for rotodynamic pump efficiency testing, **40.6:** 1
- scope, **40.6:** 1
- Methods that deal with the actual internal hydraulic losses of the pump, **9.6.7:** 2
- Metric units, **1.3:** 4, 5t.
- Microphone locations, **9.1-9.5:** 29
- double case BB5 pump, **9.1-9.5:** 33 f.
 - horizontal end suction centrifugal pump, **9.1-9.5:** 30 f.
 - horizontal reciprocating pump, **9.1-9.5:** 34 f.
 - horizontal rotary gear pump, **9.1-9.5:** 36 f.
 - horizontal rotary screw pump, **9.1-9.5:** 36 f.
 - horizontally split multistage rotodynamic pump, **9.1-9.5:** 34 f.
 - horizontally split rotodynamic pump, **9.1-9.5:** 31 f.
 - vertical in-line centrifugal pump, **9.1-9.5:** 32 f.
 - vertical reciprocating pump, **9.1-9.5:** 35 f.
 - vertical rotary pump, **9.1-9.5:** 37 f.
 - VS1 pump, **9.1-9.5:** 38 f.
- Microstructure of metals, **9.1-9.5:** 10
- Miller number, **12.1-12.6:** 60, 62
- and modified abrasivity, **12.1-12.6:** 62, 62f.
 - defined, **12.1-12.6:** 43
- Miller test, **12.1-12.6:** 60
- Minimum allowable continuous speed [$n_{min\ all}$], defined, **1.1-1.2:** 68, **2.1-2.2:** 31
- Minimum continuous stable flow [$Q_{min\ all\ stable}$], defined, **1.1-1.2:** 68, **2.1-2.2:** 30
- Minimum continuous thermal flow [$Q_{min\ thermal}$], defined, **1.1-1.2:** 68, **2.1-2.2:** 30
- Minimum allowable suction pressure (MASP), defined, **7.8:** 3
- Minimum carrying velocity, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 38
- Minimum combined efficiency, **11.6:** 6, **14.6:** 12
- Minimum flow, **1.3:** 72, **2.3:** 41
- operation below BEP, **2.3:** 41
- Minimum pump efficiency, **11.6:** 6, **14.6:** 12
- Minimum submergence formed suction intake, **9.8:** 18
- Minimum working suction pressure (MWSP), defined, **7.8:** 3
- Mixed flow pump impeller, **2.1-2.2:** 19
- Mixed flow pumps, **1.1-1.2:** 10 f., 10
- Mixed flow vertical — open line shaft (VS1), **2.1-2.2:** 6 f.

- Modal damping, defined, **9.6.8**: 60
- Mode shape diagram, **9.6.8**: 32f.
- Mode shape, defined, **9.6.8**: 61
- Model tests for pump acceptance, **11.6**: 43, **14.6**: 66
 - at increased head, **14.6**: 69
 - efficiency scaleup, **14.6**: 68
 - pump model test, **14.6**: 67
 - scaling formulas, **14.6**: 69
- Modification of pump characteristics when pumping viscous liquids, **9.6.7**: 3f.
- Modified abrasivity (Amod), **12.1-12.6**: 62, 62f.
- Molded ring packings, **8.1-8.5**: 19
- Monitoring control system, **9.6.9**: 1, 2f.
- Monitoring devices, **4.1-4.6**: 19, 24, **9.6.9**: 1, 3f.
- Monitoring equipment, **9.6.9**: 4
- Monitoring equipment, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 19
- Monitoring frequency, **9.6.9**: 4, 5t.
- Monitoring interval, **9.6.9**: 4
- Monitoring, **9.6.9**: 27
- Monitoring, defined, **9.6.5**: 55
- Motor and Motion Association (SMMA) contact information, **4.1-4.6**: 26
- Motor efficiency (η_{mot}), defined, **3.6**: 7
- Motor insulation, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 16
- Motor mounting, **2.3**: 27
- Motor power. See Total input power
- Motor reed critical frequency impact test guidelines, **9.6.8**: 80
- Motor winding integrity test objective, **5.1-5.6**: 50
 - test parameters, **5.1-5.6**: 50
- Motor winding temperature rise test acceptance, **5.1-5.6**: 53
 - objective, **5.1-5.6**: 51
 - test parameters, **5.1-5.6**: 51
 - test procedure, **5.1-5.6**: 51
- Motor winding, temperature monitoring, **9.6.5**: 6
- Motor/driver interface
 - anti-reverse rotation devices, **2.3**: 27
 - bolted couplings, **2.3**: 29
 - bottom bushings, **2.3**: 29
 - couplings, **2.3**: 29, 30 f., 31 f.
 - head shaft coupling, **2.3**: 29 f., 29
 - hollow-shaft drivers, **2.3**: 28 f., 28, 29 f.
 - pump-to-driver shafting, **2.3**: 28, 28 f.
 - self-release couplings, **2.3**: 29
 - solid-shaft drivers, **2.3**: 28 f., 28
 - thrust bearings, **2.3**: 27
 - vertical pump motor mounting, **2.3**: 27
- Motors, **9.6.9**: 14
- Motors. See Electric motors
- Mounting of pumps
 - for close-coupled configurations, **5.1-5.6**: 31
 - for magnetic drive designs using flexible shaft couplings, **5.1-5.6**: 31
 - horizontal mounting base (CMP), **5.1-5.6**: 31
 - mounting base (MDP), **5.1-5.6**: 31
 - submerged mounting (CMP), **5.1-5.6**: 31
 - vertical mounting, **5.1-5.6**: 31
- Mounting plates, **2.3**: 65, 73
- Multilevel rotordynamic model, defined, **9.6.8**: 61
- Multiphase fluids, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 23
- Multiple pump test laboratories, **40.7**: 14
- Multiple-screw pumps
 - timed screw pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 12
 - untimed screw pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 12
- Multiplex pump, **6.1-6.5**: 3
- Multiplex pumps, defined, **7.8**: 3
- n*. See Speed
- National Electrical Code, **2.3**: 92
- National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)), **1.3**: 161
 - contact information, **2.1-2.2**: 83
 - motor classifications, **2.3**: 89
 - Standard MG1, **2.1-2.2**: 83, 84
 - torque–speed curves for AC motors, **2.3**: 89 f.
 - torque–speed curves for Design A-D motors, **2.3**: 89 f.
- National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
 - Type C face-mounted motors
 - dimensions for type JM, alternating current, face-mounting, close-coupled pump motors, **2.1-2.2**: 84, 85 t., 86 f.
 - dimensions for type JP, alternating current, face-mounting, close-coupled pump motors, **2.1-2.2**: 84, 86 f., 87 t.
 - open drip-proof frame selections, **2.1-2.2**: 84, 88 t.
 - standard dimensions for HI-NEMA type HP and HPH vertical solid-shaft motors, **2.1-2.2**: 84, 89 t., 90 f.
 - TEFC frame selections, **2.1-2.2**: 84
- Natural frequencies, **2.3**: 26
 - for electric motors, **2.3**: 91
- Natural frequencies, defined, **9.6.8**: 27
- Natural frequency versus static deflection, **9.6.8**: 37f.
- Natural frequency, defined, **9.6.8**: 61
- Natural rubber, **12.1-12.6**: 67–68
- Negative thrust, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10
- NEMA Design B motors, **9.6.9**: 14
- NEMA. See National Electrical Manufacturers Association
- Neodymium iron boron magnet, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 17
- Neodymium, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 10
- Net positive inlet pressure available (NPIPA), **7.8**: 4–6, **6.1-6.5**: 31, **9.6.9**: 7
- Net positive inlet pressure available (NPIPA), defined, **3.1-3.5**: 21, **6.6**: 6
- Net positive inlet pressure available (NPIPA), definition and equation, **3.6**: 6
- Net positive inlet pressure required (NPIPR), **3.6**: 19
 - defined, **3.1-3.5**: 22, **3.6**: 6, **6.6**: 7, **7.6**: 7
- Net positive inlet pressure required test, **3.6**: 18, 19, 20
 - acceptable deviation of test quantities, **3.6**: 19
 - data presentation, **3.6**: 20
 - procedure, **3.6**: 19
 - test equipment, **3.6**: 18
- Net positive inlet pressure required, **6.1-6.5**: 31
- Net positive inlet pressure required, **8.1-8.5**: 11

- Net positive suction head (NPSH) , **1.3:** 72), **7.8:** 11
 and hot water pumps used in generation of electric power, **1.3:** 74
 insufficient, **1.3:** 72
 margin considerations, **1.3:** 73
 requirements for pumps handling hydrocarbon liquids and water at elevated temperatures, **1.3:** 73, 76f., 77f.
 vs. rate of flow (change in system dynamic component), **9.6.1:** 15f.
 vs. rate of flow (change in system static component), **9.6.1:** 16f.
- Net positive suction head (NPSH) margin, **2.3:** 46
- Net positive suction head (NPSH) test with flow rate held constant, **11.6:** 28f.
 procedure, **11.6:** 28f.
 with inlet head held constant, **11.6:** 28f.
- Net positive suction head (NPSHR) test, **11.6:** 4, 24
 inlet throttling test setup, **11.6:** 25, 25f.
 acceptance criteria, **11.6:** 29
 closed-loop, dry-pit test setup, **11.6:** 26, 26 f.
 closed-loop, wet-pit test setup, **11.6:** 26, 27f.
 with flow rate held constant, **11.6:** 27
 with inlet head held constant, **11.6:** 27
- Net positive suction head available (NPSHA)
 and datum elevation for various pump designs at eye of first-stage impeller, **9.6.1:** 1, 2f.
 and increased pipe roughness, **9.6.1:** 15
 and NPSH margin), **1.3:** 72, **2.3:** 46, **6.1-6.5:** 31, **8.1-8.5:** 12, **7.8:** 4–6, **9.6.1:** 1, 2
 and petroleum process pumps, **1.3:** 73
 as 3% head drop (manufacturers' recommendations), **9.6.1:** 4
 corrections for temperature and elevation, **1.3:** 72, **2.3:** 45
 defined, **1.1-1.2:** 71, **2.1-2.2:** 35, **6.6:** 6, **9.6.1:** 2, **11.6:** 10, **12.1-12.6:** 36
 formulas, **2.3:** 43, **9.6.1:** 1
 maximum speed due to (formula), **9.6.1:** 17
 reduction with time, **9.6.1:** 15–16, 15f., 16f.
- Net positive suction head datum, defined, **11.6:** 7, 8f.
- Net positive suction head required (NPSHR) (NPSH3)), **1.3:** 74, **6.1-6.5:** 31, **8.1-8.5:** 11, **7.8:** 4, **9.6.1:** 1, **9.6.7:** 20
 and operation above BEP, **2.3:** 41
 and operation below BEP, **2.3:** 41
 chart and liquids other than hydrocarbons or water, **1.3:** 75, 76f., 77f.
 chart instructions, **1.3:** 75, 76f., 77f.
 chart limitations, **1.3:** 74
 defined, **1.1-1.2:** 71, **2.1-2.2:** 35, **6.6:** 7, **7.6:** 7, **11.6:** 10, **12.1-12.6:** 36
 in runout condition, **2.3:** 41
 reduction for pumps handling hydrocarbon liquids and high-temperature water, **2.3:** 47, 48 f., 49 f.
- Newtonian fluid, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 38
- Nickel and nickel alloys miscellaneous types, **9.1-9.5:** 21
 nickel (95% minimum nickel), **9.1-9.5:** 20
 nickel-chromium-iron, **9.1-9.5:** 20
 nickel-copper (Monel types), **9.1-9.5:** 21
 nickel-molybdenum, **9.1-9.5:** 20
 nickel-molybdenum-chromium, **9.1-9.5:** 20
- Nitrile, **12.1-12.6:** 68
- Nitrogen (in water), **2.3:** 79
- Noise level, **1.3:** 92
 airborne, **3.1-3.5:** 49
 applications requiring minimum noise, **1.3:** 92
 barrel pumps (double case) for reduction, **1.3:** 94
 combined noise level of pump and driver, **1.3:** 92, 93f.
 correction factors, **1.3:** 93, 93t., 94f.
 estimating sound levels (L_{pa}), **1.3:** 92
 fluidborne, **3.1-3.5:** 48
 impeller trim and lower levels, **1.3:** 94, 94f.
 multistage pumps and lower levels, **1.3:** 93, 93t.
 noise cladding or enclosure, **1.3:** 94
 power cut-off and lower levels, **1.3:** 94
- Nomenclature, **4.1-4.6:** 6 t. , **8.1-8.5:** 2
 See *a/so* Terminology
- Nomenclature, standardization of, **50.7:** 2
- Nonhomogeneous flow (partially suspended solids), defined, **12.1-12.6:** 40
- Nonhomogeneous flow, **6.1-6.5:** 35
- Non-Newtonian fluid, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 39
- Nonpusher seals, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 37
- Nonpusher split seals, **12.1-12.6:** 82, 83f.
- Nonsettling slurries, defined, **12.1-12.6:** 40, 45
- Nonsettling slurry, **6.1-6.5:** 35
- Nonsynchronous, defined, **9.6.8:** 61
- Normal condition point (n), defined, **1.1-1.2:** 70, **2.1-2.2:** 34, **6.6:** 2, **12.1-12.6:** 35
- Normal maximum power, **9.6.9:** 7
- Normal minimum power, **9.6.9:** 7
- Normative content, **9.6.9:** 27, **50.7:** 4
- Normative, defined, **9.6.5:** 55
- Nozzle loading, **2.3:** 26
- Nozzle loads, **12.1-12.6:** 86
 allowable sideways slide force per bolt, **12.1-12.6:** 88
 allowable, based on hold-down capability criterion, **12.1-12.6:** 87
 and driver and pump, **12.1-12.6:** 86
 and pump hold-down bolts, **12.1-12.6:** 87
 and sliding forces and moments, **12.1-12.6:** 88, 88f., 89f., 91f.
 assumed effect of, **12.1-12.6:** 87
 bolts in tension, **12.1-12.6:** 91f., 90t.
 calculating allowable forces on hold-down bolts, **12.1-12.6:** 90
 extension procedure, **12.1-12.6:** 91
 limiting factors, **12.1-12.6:** 86
 metric units, **12.1-12.6:** 104t.
 orientations, **12.1-12.6:** 86f.
 precalculated values, **12.1-12.6:** 91, 104t., 105t.
 US customary units, **12.1-12.6:** 105t.
- NPIPA. See Net positive inlet pressure available

- NPIPR. See Net positive inlet pressure required
- NPSH datum plane, **1.1-1.2:** 69, **2.1-2.2:** 32, **9.6.1:** 1
- NPSH margin ratio (NPSHA divided by NPSH3), **9.6.1:** 2
- NPSH margin, **9.6.1:** 2
- and 3% head drop, **9.6.1:** 2
 - and best efficiency point (BEP), **9.6.1:** 4, 4f.
 - and building services (HVAC), **9.6.1:** 12
 - and cavitation in centrifugal pumps, **9.6.1:** 14
 - and chemical process pumps, **9.6.1:** 9
 - and circulating/cooling water pumps, **9.6.1:** 10
 - and condensate pumps, **9.6.1:** 10
 - and duty cycle, **9.6.1:** 6
 - and electric power plant (non-nuclear) pumps, **9.6.1:** 9–10, 10t.
 - and general industrial pumping applications, **9.6.1:** 14
 - and greater suction head, **9.6.1:** 7
 - and hot water, **9.6.1:** 9
 - and impeller vane overlap, **9.6.1:** 5, 5f.
 - and inlet tip speed, **9.6.1:** 4
 - and larger impeller eye, **9.6.1:** 4
 - and materials, **9.6.1:** 6
 - and NPSH3 reduction (hydrocarbon correction factor), **9.6.1:** 8
 - and nuclear power plant pumps, **9.6.1:** 10
 - and oil and gas industry pumping applications, **9.6.1:** 13
 - and oil and gas pipeline pumps, **9.6.1:** 13
 - and operating range, **9.6.1:** 6
 - and petroleum (hydrocarbon) process pumps, **9.6.1:** 8–9
 - and poor suction conditions, **9.6.1:** 7
 - and pulp and paper stock pumps, **9.6.1:** 11
 - and pump size, **9.6.1:** 5
 - and pumpage effects, **9.6.1:** 5
 - and recommended maximum operating speeds, **9.6.1:** 17, 18f.
 - and resistance to cavitation damage, **9.6.1:** 10
 - and slurry pumps, **9.6.1:** 12–13
 - and suction specific speed, **9.6.1:** 4–5, 7, 17
 - and variable flows, **9.6.1:** 11
 - and water injection pumps, **9.6.1:** 13
 - and water/wastewater pumps, **9.6.1:** 10–11, 11t.
- conservative suction specific speed to ensure adequate margin, **9.6.1:** 17–18
- defined, **9.6.1:** 1
- dependence on accurate NPSH3 and NPSHA, **9.6.1:** 7
- determination of, **9.6.1:** 6–7
- extra, situations calling for, **9.6.1:** 7
- factors considered in establishing, **9.6.1:** 3
- formula (NPSHA – NPSH3), **9.6.1:** 2
- greater, as not detrimental, but possibly not desirable, **9.6.1:** 7
- NPSH reference plane, **9.6.1:** 1
- NPSH tests objective, **14.6:** 20
- tolerance factor for NPSHR, **14.6:** 21
- Type I: determination of NPSH3 for multiple flow rates, **14.6:** 21, 22 t.
 - Type II: determination of NPSH3 for single flow rate, **14.6:** 21, 22 t.
 - Type III: verification of limited influence of cavitation on performance at specified NPSHA, **14.6:** 21
 - Type IV: verification of guaranteed characteristics at specified NPSHA, **14.6:** 21
- NPSH tests, arrangements for, **14.6:** 49
- air content in closed loops with suction pressure below atmospheric, **14.6:** 50
 - air content in open loops, **14.6:** 50, 50 f.
 - allowable air content, **14.6:** 49
 - characteristics of the circuit, **14.6:** 49
 - characteristics of the test liquid, **14.6:** 49
 - closed-loop, **14.6:** 51, 52 f.
 - determination of vapor pressure, **14.6:** 50
 - example arrangements, **14.6:** 51, 52 f.
 - open sump with level control, **14.6:** 51, 53 f.
 - open sump with throttle valve, **14.6:** 51, 53 f.
- NPSH. See Net positive suction head (NPSH)
- NPSH3 correction factor, **9.6.7:** 22
- NPSH3 defined, **2.1-2.2:** 35, **9.6.1:** 2, **9.6.7:** 21
- determined by variable flow rate test, **9.6.1:** 2, 3f.
 - determined for constant flow rate, **9.6.1:** 2, 3f.
 - effect of viscosity on, **9.6.7:** 21
 - increase due to cavitation erosion, **9.6.1:** 16
- NPSHA value required, **11.6:** 28
- objective of NPSH tests, **11.6:** 25
- procedure, **11.6:** 27
- records, **11.6:** 29
- setup, **11.6:** 25, 25f., 26 f., 27f.
- vapor pressure, **11.6:** 29
- variable-lift test setup, **11.6:** 25, 26 f.
- with variable flow rate and variable inlet pressure, **11.6:** 27, 28 f.
- NPSHA. See Net positive suction head available
- NPSHR test
- aeration of water, **6.6:** 16
 - arrangements, **6.6:** 15
 - correction to rated speed, **6.6:** 16
 - data presentation, **6.6:** 17
 - equipment, **6.6:** 15
 - liquid, **6.6:** 16
 - objective, **6.6:** 14
 - procedure, **6.6:** 16
 - results, **6.6:** 17f.
 - tolerance of test parameters, **6.6:** 17
- NPSHR. See Net positive suction head required
- N_{ss} . See Suction specific speed
- Nuclear power plant pumps, **9.6.1:** 10
- Numeric fields, **50.7:** 12
- Numerical analysis recommendations, **9.6.8:** 94
- Numerical analysis, defined, **9.6.8:** 61
- Nutating disc meters, **9.6.9:** 13
- Objective of standard, **5.1-5.6:** 1
- Octave-band analyzer, **3.1-3.5:** 49
- Odors (in water), **2.3:** 79

- Oersted, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 11
- Off-design rating procedures, **4.1-4.6**: 17
- Offgassing liquids and system performance, **7.8**: 11
- Ogee spillway transition, **9.8**: 35
- OH or BB pump baseplate natural frequency analysis (modal FEA), **9.6.8**: 51
 - analysis, **9.6.8**: 52
 - interpretation of results, **9.6.8**: 52
 - methodology, **9.6.8**: 51
 - model, **9.6.8**: 51
 - validation, **9.6.8**: 52
- OH or BB pump shaft-end deflection analysis (static structural FEA), **9.6.8**: 51
 - analysis, **9.6.8**: 51
 - methodology, **9.6.8**: 51
 - model, **9.6.8**: 51
 - validation, **9.6.8**: 51
- OH00-OH12. See Pump type OH00-Pump type OH12
- Oil and gas industry pumping applications, **9.6.1**: 13
 - pipeline pumps, **9.6.1**: 13
 - water injection pumps, **9.6.1**: 13
- Open bottom can intakes, **9.8**: 26, 27f.
- Open line-shaft pumps, **2.3**: 16, 17 f., 18 f.
 - bearing bushings, **2.3**: 16
 - bearing lubrication, **2.3**: 19
 - bearing spacing, **2.3**: 19
- Open sumps, **9.8**: 57
- Open trench-type wet-well
 - hydraulic jump, **9.8**: 81, 82f.
 - inlet baffle, **9.8**: 82, 82f.
- Open/enclosed line shaft, **2.1-2.2**: 15
- Operating duty point, **1.3**: 66
 - continuous, intermittent, and cyclic service, **1.3**: 69
 - series and parallel operation, **1.3**: 68, 68f., 69f.
- Operating range, **2.3**: 39, 40 f.
 - and rotative speed limitations, **2.3**: 57, 59 f., 60 f.
 - operation below, and discharge recirculation, **2.3**: 41
 - operation below, and suction recirculation, **2.3**: 41
 - operation below, and temperature rise, **2.3**: 41
- Operating speeds, recommended maximum, **9.6.1**: 17, 18f.
- Operation, **3.1-3.5**: 63
 - and air entrainment, **4.1-4.6**: 23
 - and air in containment shell, **4.1-4.6**: 24
 - and demagnetization, **4.1-4.6**: 25
 - and humidity effects on magnets, **4.1-4.6**: 25
 - and internal temperature rise, **4.1-4.6**: 24
 - and pump monitoring devices, **4.1-4.6**: 24
 - and temperature limits of magnets, **4.1-4.6**: 24
 - decoupling (MDP), **5.1-5.6**: 42
 - flow rate, **3.1-3.5**: 65
 - leakage, **3.1-3.5**: 65
 - lubrication, **3.1-3.5**: 64
 - other precautions, **5.1-5.6**: 42
 - prestart-up checklist, **3.1-3.5**: 63
 - prevention of, without liquid flow, **4.1-4.6**: 23
 - shutdown, **3.1-3.5**: 65
 - standard, **4.1-4.6**: 23
 - startup procedure, **5.1-5.6**: 41
 - start-up, **3.1-3.5**: 64
 - vibration, **5.1-5.6**: 42
- Operation and maintenance, **8.1-8.5**: 15
- Operational considerations, **12.1-12.6**: 96
- Operational problems, **12.1-12.6**: 93–94
 - and low supply flow rates, **12.1-12.6**: 94
 - and pump load on driver, **12.1-12.6**: 93
 - information to provide to pump supplier, **12.1-12.6**: 94
- Optimum normally attainable efficiency chart (metric units), **20.3**: 6 f.
- Optimum normally attainable efficiency chart (US customary units), **20.3**: 8 f.
- Optional tests, **14.6**: 44
 - bandwidth of manufacturing tolerances, **14.6**: 44
 - bandwidth of measuring tolerances, **14.6**: 44
 - cost considerations, **14.6**: 44
 - critical service or application, defined, **14.6**: 45
 - definitions, **14.6**: 45
 - new/unique design, defined, **14.6**: 45
 - standard pumps, defined, **14.6**: 45
 - test specification matrix, **14.6**: 45, 45 t.
- Orifices, **9.6.9**: 13
 - in rate-of-flow monitoring, **9.6.5**: 19
- OSHA requirements, **3.1-3.5**: 49
- Other metals and coating systems ceramic, **9.1-9.5**: 23
 - chromium coatings, **9.1-9.5**: 23
 - cobalt alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 - cobalt-chromium-tungsten alloy, **9.1-9.5**: 23
 - flame-sprayed carbide or oxide, **9.1-9.5**: 23
 - lead and lead alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 - nickel or cobalt-chromium boron alloy, **9.1-9.5**: 23
 - tin-base bearing metals, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 - titanium alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 23
 - zinc and zinc alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 - zirconium, **9.1-9.5**: 23
- Outer magnet assembly, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 18
- Outer magnetic assembly (driver), defined, **4.1-4.6**: 11
- Outlet (discharge) pressure (p_d), definition and equation, **3.1-3.5**: 20, **3.6**: 5
- Outlet measuring section, **40.6**: 15
- Outlet pressure tapping, **40.6**: 16 f.
 - horizontal, **40.6**: 16 f.
 - vertical, **40.6**: 16 f.
- Outlet total head, definition, **40.6**: 15
- Outlet, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
- Outside-adjustable lost-motion valve, **8.1-8.5**: 7f.
- Overall efficiency (η_{OA}), defined, **1.1-1.2**: 72, **2.1-2.2**: 36, **11.6**: 11, **12.1-12.6**: 37
- Overall efficiency (η_{OA}), definition and formula, **3.6**: 7
- Overall efficiency, defined, **6.6**: 7
- Overhung (OH) type, **1.3**: 1, 32, 32f., 110, 111f.
 - as self-priming pump, **1.3**: 120
- Overhung impeller (defined), **12.1-12.6**: 3
- Overhung impeller pumps icons, **1.1-1.2**: 74 f.–78 f.
- Overhung impeller types, **1.1-1.2**: 74

- Overhung impeller, close coupled, high-speed integral gear, single stage pump, **1.1-1.2:** 24 f.
- Overhung impeller, close coupled, single stage, end suction pump, **1.1-1.2:** 25 f.
- Overhung impeller, close coupled, single stage, in-line pump (showing seal and packing), **1.1-1.2:** 22 f.
- Overhung impeller, close coupled, single stage, vertical end suction pump (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59, 64 f.
- Overhung impeller, close coupled, submersible, diffuser, single stage, end suction pump, **1.1-1.2:** 26 f.
- Overhung impeller, close coupled, submersible, volute, single stage, end suction pump, **1.1-1.2:** 27 f.
- Overhung impeller, close coupled, vertical, end suction, single stage, vertically mounted, OH5A pump, **1.1-1.2:** 23 f.
- Overhung impeller, close-coupled, single-stage, end suction, metal, submersible pump with agitator (OH8B), **12.1-12.6:** 19f.
- Overhung impeller, close-coupled, single-stage, submersible, elastomer-coated, single suction pump (OH8B), **12.1-12.6:** 16f.
- Overhung impeller, close-coupled, single-stage, submersible, elastomer-lined, double suction pump (OH8B), **12.1-12.6:** 18f.
- Overhung impeller, close-coupled, single-stage, submersible, elastomer-lined, single suction pump (OH8B), **12.1-12.6:** 17f.
- Overhung impeller, close-coupled, single-stage, submersible, metal, double suction pump (OH8B), **12.1-12.6:** 20f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, horizontal, foot mounted, single stage pump, **1.1-1.2:** 15 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, horizontal, foot mounted, single stage, stock pump, **1.1-1.2:** 14 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, axial flow, horizontal pump, **1.1-1.2:** 28 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, centerline mounted (top suction) pump dimensions (letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59, 61 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, centerline mounted pump (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59, 60 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, centerline mounted, API 610 pump, **1.1-1.2:** 18 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, centerline mounted, pump on baseplate (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59, 60 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, centerline mounted, pump on baseplate top suction (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59, 61 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, foot mounted ANSI B73.1 pump, **1.1-1.2:** 16 f.
See also ASME/ANSI B73.1
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, foot mounted, mixed flow pump, **1.1-1.2:** 15 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, foot mounted, self-priming pump, **1.1-1.2:** 17 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, frame mounted pump (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, frame mounted pump on baseplate (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59, 59 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, frame mounted pump, **1.1-1.2:** 12 f.
pump dimensions (letter designations), **2.1-2.2:** 59 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, single stage, frame mounted, lined pump, **1.1-1.2:** 13 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, vertical, end suction, single stage, integral driver support (dimension letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 64 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, vertical, end suction, single stage, OH3A pump, **1.1-1.2:** 20 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, vertical, end suction, single stage, separate driver support (dimension letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 63 f.
- Overhung impeller, flexibly coupled, vertical, in-line, integral bearing frame, single stage pump, **1.1-1.2:** 19 f.
- Overhung impeller, integral bearing frame, single stage, vertical end suction with flexible coupling (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59, 64 f.
- Overhung impeller, rigidly coupled, single stage, vertical in-line pump, **1.1-1.2:** 21 f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single stage, frame mounted (vertically mounted) pump (pump dimensions letter designations), **1.1-1.2:** 59, 63 f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, frame-mounted, elastomer-lined pump (OH0), **12.1-12.6:** 6f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, frame-mounted, elastomer-lined pump, adjustable sideliners (OH0), **12.1-12.6:** 7f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, frame-mounted, end suction, metal, tie bolt plate construction pump (OH0), **12.1-12.6:** 11f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, frame-mounted, end suction, metal, unlined casing pump (OH0), **12.1-12.6:** 9f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, frame-mounted, end suction, vulcanized- elastomer-lined pump (OH0), **12.1-12.6:** 8f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, frame-mounted, metal-lined pump (OH0), **12.1-12.6:** 5f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, frame-mounted, side inlet, metal, unlined casing pump (OH0), **12.1-12.6:** 10f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, wet pit cantilever, elastomer, vulcanized-lined, double suction pump (VS5), **12.1-12.6:** 14f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, wet

- pit cantilever, elastomer-lined, single suction pump (VS5), **12.1-12.6**: 13f.
- Overhung impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, wet pit cantilever, unlined, metal, single suction pump (VS5), **12.1-12.6**: 15f.
- Overhung pump, defined, **9.6.8**: 27
- Overhung pumps
 - back pull-out assembly, defined, **2.1-2.2**: 42, 43 f.
 - bare rotor, defined, **2.1-2.2**: 43
 - liquid end (wet end) assembly, defined, **2.1-2.2**: 41, 41 f.
 - power end (frame assembly), defined, **2.1-2.2**: 42, 42 f.
 - rotating assembly, defined, **2.1-2.2**: 43
 - terms, **2.1-2.2**: 41
- Overhung, flexibly coupled pumps, **1.1-1.2**: 2 f., 5
- Overhung, open impeller, separately coupled, single-stage, foot-mounted, metal, ASME B73.1 type pump (OH1), **12.1-12.6**: 12f.
- Overhung, rigidly coupled pumps, **1.1-1.2**: 2 f., 5
- Overhung, short coupled pumps, **1.1-1.2**: 2 f., 5
- Overview and relevance of dynamics considerations, **9.6.8**: 7
- Overview, **50.7**: 3
- P*. See Power
- p*. See Pressure
- p_a . See Absolute pressure. Packing, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- p_{acc} . See Acceleration pressure
- Pacemakers, caution regarding, **4.1-4.6**: 21
- Packed stuffing boxes, **2.3**: 24
 - for low to intermediate pressure service, **2.3**: 24, 25 f.
 - losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 51
 - with water injection, **2.3**: 24, 25 f.
- Packing, **12.1-12.6**: 71
 - allowance for expansion, **8.1-8.5**: 19
 - and water quality, **12.1-12.6**: 84, 84t.
 - API Plan 02, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 - API Plan 11, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 - API Plan 32, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 - API Plan 52, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 - API Plan 53, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 - API Plan 54, **12.1-12.6**: 84
 - API Plan 62, **12.1-12.6**: 85
 - basis of recommendations, **8.1-8.5**: 20
 - canvas, **8.1-8.5**: 20
 - chemical, **8.1-8.5**: 20
 - clearance, **8.1-8.5**: 22
 - compression-type, **12.1-12.6**: 71–73, 72f., 73f.
 - cup-type, **8.1-8.5**: 25f.
 - drip, **8.1-8.5**: 19
 - dry-type packing, **12.1-12.6**: 73, 74, 75f.
 - fitting, **8.1-8.5**: 20, 21f.
 - flow-through flush, **12.1-12.6**: 72, 73f.
 - flush arrangements, **12.1-12.6**: 84–85
 - flush-type arrangement, **12.1-12.6**: 71, 72f., 74
 - gland adjustment, **8.1-8.5**: 19
 - hydraulic packing, **8.1-8.5**: 20, 21f.
 - installation, **12.1-12.6**: 73
 - installation, **8.1-8.5**: 18
 - joints, **8.1-8.5**: 21f.
 - leakage, **12.1-12.6**: 73–74
 - lubrication, **8.1-8.5**: 20
 - materials, **12.1-12.6**: 74
 - molded ring, **8.1-8.5**: 19
 - soaking, **8.1-8.5**: 20
 - swelling, **8.1-8.5**: 22
 - weep-type arrangement, **12.1-12.6**: 72, 72f., 73f., 74
- Parallel operation, **2.3**: 39, 40 f.
- Parameter B, **9.6.7**: 4
- Parameter, defined, **9.6.5**: 55
- Parameters, **9.6.9**: 27
- Parametric study, defined, **9.6.8**: 61
- Parasitic losses, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Part name listing (alphabetical), **1.1-1.2**: 47 t., **2.1-2.2**: 21 t., **12.1-12.6**: 21t.–25t.
- Part names, **12.1-12.6**: 4
 - numerical listing, **12.1-12.6**: 26t.–27t.
- Part numbers, **1.1-1.2**: 56 t.
- Participant criteria, **40.7**: 2
 - through purchase or acquisition, **40.7**: 3
- Participant, defined, **40.7**: 1
- Particle counting, in lubricant analysis, **9.6.5**: 16, 18
- Particle impact, **12.1-12.6**: 58, 59, 60
 - erosion rates for different materials and impact angles, **12.1-12.6**: 60, 60f.
- Particles, **4.1-4.6**: 16
- Parts listing and cross-sectional drawings section, **2.4**: 43
- Parts names and definitions, **5.1-5.6**: 11t.
- PAT. See Pump as turbine
- p_b . See Barometric pressure
- p_d . See Discharge pressure
 - See also Outlet (discharge) pressure
 - See also Total discharge pressure
- Pedestal, driver, **2.3**: 65, 74
- Percent accumulation. See Percent overpressure
- Percent overpressure, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- Percent regulation. See Percent overpressure
- Percent solids by volume, **6.1-6.5**: 35
- Percent solids by weight, **6.1-6.5**: 35
- Performance and selection criteria, **1.3**: 66
 - efficiency prediction method, **1.3**: 81
 - impeller trimming, **1.3**: 71, 71f.
 - intake design, **1.3**: 83
 - liquid temperature rise, **1.3**: 78
 - minimum flow, **1.3**: 72
 - net positive suction head (NPSH), **1.3**: 72
 - net positive suction head available (NPSHA), **1.3**: 72
 - operating duty point, **1.3**: 66
 - operation away from BEP, **1.3**: 71
 - pump liquid temperature limits on end suction pumps, **1.3**: 83, 84t.
 - pump performance after impeller diameter change, **1.3**: 69, 70f., 71f.
 - pump performance curve vs. system curve, **1.3**: 67, 67f.

Performance and selection criteria — *Continued*

- reverse runaway speed, **1.3**: 82
- shutdown, **1.3**: 82
- startup, **1.3**: 81
- suction performance, **1.3**: 78
- system pressure limitation, **1.3**: 71
- torque vs. speed curves, **1.3**: 83, 86f., 87f., 89f., 91f.
- variable speed curve, **1.3**: 68, 68f.
- viscous liquid effects, **1.3**: 81
- water hammer (hydraulic shock), **1.3**: 82
- Performance calculations (change in pump impeller diameter)
 - change in power, **11.6**: 51
 - change in rate of flow, **11.6**: 50
 - change in total head, **11.6**: 51
- Performance calculations (change in pump speed)
 - change in NPSHR, **11.6**: 50
 - change in power, **11.6**: 50
 - change in rate of flow, **11.6**: 49
 - change in total head, **11.6**: 50
- Performance chart example, single-stage pump (metric units), **9.6.7**: 12f.
- Performance chart example, single-stage pump (US customary units), **9.6.7**: 15f.
- Performance curve, **40.6**: 12
- Performance derating
 - based on solids size and content, **12.1-12.6**: 52–53, 52f.
 - based on viscosity, **12.1-12.6**: 51–52
- Performance enhancements, for trench-type wet wells, **9.8**: 81
 - bare trenches performance, **9.8**: 81, 82f.
 - enhancements choice, **9.8**: 85
 - fillets, **9.8**: 85
 - floor cones, **9.8**: 83, 83f.
 - flow splitters, **9.8**: 84–85, 84f.
 - inlet baffles, **9.8**: 82
 - last pump, **9.8**: 85
 - maintaining cleaning velocity, **9.8**: 85
 - omission of enhancements, **9.8**: 86
 - ramps, **9.8**: 85
 - suction bell vanes, **9.8**: 82, 83f.
- Performance example calculations (metric units), **9.6.7**: 12t.
- Performance example calculations (US customary units), **9.6.7**: 14t.
- Performance test, **6.6**: 8, **11.6**: 4, 11
 - acceptable fluctuation of test readings, **6.6**: 9
 - acceptance criteria, **11.6**: 15
 - acceptance grade, default, **11.6**: 15
 - acceptance grades, **11.6**: 11, 15, 15t.
 - acceptance values, **6.6**: 8
 - acceptance, **6.6**: 8
 - calculation of input power, **6.6**: 12
 - calculation of outlet or discharge pressure, **6.6**: 12
 - calculation of output power (water horsepower), **6.6**: 13
 - calculation of pump (mechanical) efficiency, **6.6**: 13
 - calculation of total differential pressure, **6.6**: 12
 - calculations of inlet or suction pressure, **6.6**: 12
 - data needed prior to test run, **6.6**: 10
 - data readings, **11.6**: 14
 - default acceptance grade, **11.6**: 19t.
 - default test acceptance grades for pump application, **11.6**: 17
 - dry-pit performance test setup (alternate arrangement), **11.6**: 15
 - dry-pit performance test setup (sample), **11.6**: 12, 14f.
 - evaluation of efficiency or power, **11.6**: 17, 18f.
 - evaluation of flow and head, **11.6**: 17
 - grade 1B, **11.6**: 15, 15 t.
 - grade 1E, **11.6**: 15, 15 t.
 - grade 1U, **11.6**: 15, 15t.
 - grade 2B, **11.6**: 15, 15 t.
 - grade 2U, **11.6**: 15, 15t.
 - grade 3B, **11.6**: 15, 15 t.
 - guarantee point (rated point, duty point), **11.6**: 11, 15
 - guarantee point and measured pump curve, **11.6**: 15, 15t., 16 f.
 - guarantee rate of flow (Q_G), **11.6**: 15
 - guarantee total head (H_G), **11.6**: 15
 - inlet submergence wet-pit test, **11.6**: 12, 13f.
 - instrument accuracy, **6.6**: 9
 - instrumentation calibration, **6.6**: 8
 - instrumentation, **6.6**: 8
 - line voltage, **11.6**: 14
 - maximum pump input power (P_G), **11.6**: 15
 - minimum pump efficiency (h_G), **11.6**: 15
 - NPSHA exceeding NPSHR, **11.6**: 12
 - open or closed tank, **6.6**: 9f.
 - performance correction for viscosity, **6.6**: 13
 - performance correction to rated speed, **6.6**: 13
 - performance curve, **11.6**: 20
 - piping arrangement, **11.6**: 14
 - plotting performance test results, **6.6**: 13
 - plotting test results, **6.6**: 13f.
 - procedure, **6.6**: 10, **11.6**: 14
 - records and reports, **6.6**: 12, **11.6**: 19
 - reduced impeller diameters, determination of, **11.6**: 20
 - reduction of impeller diameter, **11.6**: 20
 - report, **6.6**: 13
 - requirements, **11.6**: 19
 - results, presenting, **11.6**: 20, 20 f.
 - sample data sheet, **6.6**: 10, 11f.
 - setup, **6.6**: 9
 - test points, **11.6**: 14
 - test setup, **11.6**: 12, 13f., 14 f.
 - Type I, **6.6**: 8
 - Type II, **6.6**: 8
 - Type III, **6.6**: 8
 - wet-pit performance test setup (sample), **11.6**: 12, 13f.
 - witnessing, **6.6**: 8
- Performance testing, **7.6**: 1
 - acceptance tolerance, **7.6**: 7

Performance testing — *Continued*

- setup, **7.6:** 8
- test conditions, **7.6:** 3
- types of tests, **7.6:** 3
- variations in test procedures, **7.6:** 1
- vibration and acoustical testing methods not included, **7.6:** 1
- witnessing, **7.6:** 7
- Performance tests
 - acceptable deviation of dependent test quantities from specified values for Type III and Type IV testing, **3.6:** 8
 - acceptable deviation of independent test quantities from specified values at the test parameters, **3.6:** 8
 - acceptance levels, **3.6:** 8
 - acceptance, **3.6:** 8
 - and inlet conditions, **3.6:** 10
 - and liquid temperature, viscosity, and specific gravity, **3.6:** 11
 - and outlet pressure, **3.6:** 10
 - and speed, **3.6:** 11
 - calculations, **3.6:** 13
 - conditions, **3.6:** 10
 - correction to power (calculation), **3.6:** 14
 - correction to rate of flow (calculation), **3.6:** 14
 - correction to specified speed (calculations), **3.6:** 14, 15 f.
 - differential pressure calculation, **3.6:** 13
 - fluctuation and accuracy, **3.6:** 9
 - input power calculation, **3.6:** 13
 - instrument calibration intervals, **3.6:** 25, 26 t.
 - instrumentation, **3.6:** 8
 - output power calculation, **3.6:** 13
 - performance at constant pressure, **3.6:** 15 f., 16
 - performance at constant speed, **3.6:** 15 f., 16
 - presentation of results, **3.6:** 15, 15 f.
 - procedure, **3.6:** 11
 - pump efficiency calculation, **3.6:** 14
 - records, **3.6:** 12
 - setup, **3.6:** 9, 10 f.
 - tabulation sheet, **3.6:** 11 t.
- Performance tests analysis, **14.6:** 21
 - bilateral tolerance acceptance, **14.6:** 15, 16 f.
 - date of testing, **14.6:** 19
 - default test acceptance grades, **14.6:** 18, 18 t.
 - efficiency evaluation, **14.6:** 15, 17 f.
 - flow evaluation, **14.6:** 15
 - flow tolerance, **14.6:** 15, 16 f.
 - grades and tolerances, **14.6:** 14, 14 t.
 - head evaluation, **14.6:** 15
 - head tolerance, **14.6:** 15, 16 f.
 - impeller diameter reduction to obtain specified characteristics, **14.6:** 23
 - made with NPSHA different from that guaranteed, **14.6:** 23
 - minimum test points, **14.6:** 20
 - performance curves, **14.6:** 23
 - point selection, **14.6:** 20
 - power evaluation, **14.6:** 15, 17 f.
 - procedure submittals, **14.6:** 19
 - procedures, **14.6:** 19
 - records and reports, **14.6:** 19
 - retesting after reducing impeller diameter, **14.6:** 24
 - See also* Test tolerances, reasons for
 - site tests, **14.6:** 19
 - speed of rotation during, **14.6:** 20
 - test conditions, **14.6:** 20
 - testing equipment (documentation and calibration), **14.6:** 19
 - tolerance field for acceptance grade 1E, **14.6:** 15, 17 f.
 - tolerance field for acceptance grades 1B, 2B, and 3B, **14.6:** 15, 17 t.
 - tolerance field for acceptance grades 1U and 2U, **14.6:** 17 f.
 - tolerances for pumps with input power of 10 kW (13 hp) and below, **14.6:** 15
 - translation of test results into data based on specified speed of rotation and density, **14.6:** 21
 - translation of test results to guarantee conditions, **14.6:** 21
 - unilateral tolerance acceptance, **14.6:** 15, 16 f.
- Performance tests, arrangements for, **14.6:** 19, 25
 - bowl assembly total head (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 32
 - bowl head (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 32
 - correction of suction pressure for suction recirculation, **14.6:** 26, 29 f.
 - error in measurement of H(Q) depending on distance of suction pressure gauge from impeller, **14.6:** 26, 28 f.
 - flow at suction at part load, **14.6:** 28 f.
 - flow measuring, best conditions for, **14.6:** 25
 - for pumping installations under submerged conditions, **14.6:** 32
 - for self-priming pumps, **14.6:** 35
 - friction head losses for deep-well pumps (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 34
 - friction losses at inlet and outlet, **14.6:** 35
 - head for vertically suspended pumps (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 32
 - inlet measuring section, **14.6:** 26
 - inlet total head (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 32
 - measurement methods, **14.6:** 26
 - measurement principles, **14.6:** 25
 - outlet measuring section, **14.6:** 29
 - outlet total head (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 32
 - pressure readings, correction for height difference in, **14.6:** 31
 - pressure tap location above liquid level and equal to atmospheric pressure (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 34
 - pressure tap location above liquid level and not equal to atmospheric pressure (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 34

- Performance tests, arrangements for — *Continued*
 - pressure tap location below pump intake and U1 is not 0 (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 34
 - pressure tapping perpendicular to plane of volute or to plane of a bend, **14.6:** 29, 29 f.
 - pressure tappings, **14.6:** 29 f., 30, 30 f.
 - pump total head (submerged conditions), **14.6:** 32
 - pump total head, **14.6:** 25, 27 f.
 - pumps tested with fittings, **14.6:** 32
 - simulated test arrangements, **14.6:** 31
 - static pressure tappings, requirements for, **14.6:** 30 f., 30
- Performance tests, reporting results of, **11.6:** 70, **14.6:** 56
 - data to include, **11.6:** 70, **14.6:** 56
 - NPSH test requirements, **11.6:** 72, **14.6:** 58
 - person(s) who perform test, **11.6:** 70, **14.6:** 56
 - person(s) who witness test, **11.6:** 70, **14.6:** 56
 - pump data, **11.6:** 70, **14.6:** 56
 - pump test data sheet, **11.6:** 73f.
 - sample pump test curve, **11.6:** 71f., **14.6:** 57 f.
 - sample pump test sheet, **11.6:** 72, **14.6:** 58, 59 f.
 - test condition data, **11.6:** 70, **14.6:** 56
 - test data, **11.6:** 70, **14.6:** 56
 - test motor data, **11.6:** 70, **14.6:** 56
- Peristaltic pumps, **3.1-3.5:** 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f., 14f.
 - advantages, **3.1-3.5:** 8
 - description, **3.1-3.5:** 8
 - range chart, **3.1-3.5:** 9f.
- Permeability (magnetic), defined, **4.1-4.6:** 11
- Permeance, defined, **4.1-4.6:** 11
- Personnel competencies, **40.7:** 9
 - training, **40.7:** 9
- Petroleum (hydrocarbon) process pumps, **9.6.1:** 8–9
 - hydrocarbon correction factor, **9.6.1:** 8
- ρ_f . See Friction loss pressure
- ρ_g . See Gauge pressure
- Phenolic piston rings, **8.1-8.5:** 23
 - application, **8.1-8.5:** 23
 - clearance, **8.1-8.5:** 24
 - forms, **8.1-8.5:** 24
 - maximum concentration of chemicals, **8.1-8.5:** 23t.
- Physical hydraulic model study, **9.8:** 48
- Physical model study, **9.8:** 48
 - acceptance criteria, **9.8:** 54
 - instrumentation and measuring techniques, **9.8:** 51–53, 52f., 53f.
 - need for, **9.8:** 48
 - objectives, **9.8:** 48–49
 - report preparation, **9.8:** 54
 - scope, **9.8:** 51
 - similitude and scale selection, **9.8:** 49–51
 - test plan, **9.8:** 53–54
- Pick list fields, **50.7:** 12
- Pilot gear. See Timing gear
- Pipe dope, **8.1-8.5:** 17
- Pipe tape, **8.1-8.5:** 17
- Piping, **12.1-12.6:** 91
 - accessory equipment, **3.1-3.5:** 62
 - foot valves, **3.1-3.5:** 62
 - inlet piping, **3.1-3.5:** 61
 - nozzle loads, **3.1-3.5:** 61
 - outlet piping, **3.1-3.5:** 61
 - pipe-to-pump alignment, **3.1-3.5:** 61f.
 - pump jacket piping, **3.1-3.5:** 61
 - system design, **12.1-12.6:** 92–93
- Piping – downstream (discharge) multiplex considerations, **7.8:** 11
 - single pump considerations, **7.8:** 10
- Piping – general considerations connections, **7.8:** 7
 - corrosive effects, **7.8:** 8
 - environmental considerations, **7.8:** 7–8
 - extreme temperature and humidity effects, **7.8:** 8
 - hydrostatic leak test, **7.8:** 7
 - materials, **7.8:** 6
 - pressure ratings, **7.8:** 7
 - seismic considerations, **7.8:** 7
 - sun protection, **7.8:** 8
 - support, **7.8:** 6
- Piping – upstream (suction)
 - multiplex considerations, **7.8:** 9–10, 9f–10f
 - single pump considerations, **7.8:** 8–9
- Piston cups, **8.1-8.5:** 25f.
 - assembling, **8.1-8.5:** 25f.
 - composition, **8.1-8.5:** 24
 - inspection, **8.1-8.5:** 26
 - installation, **8.1-8.5:** 25
 - list of liquids and materials suitable for, **8.1-8.5:** 24
 - nut tightening, **8.1-8.5:** 26, 26f.
 - synthetic rubber, **8.1-8.5:** 25
- Piston pumps, **6.1-6.5:** 1f., 1
 - cup-type pistons, **6.1-6.5:** 78–79
 - typical service, **6.1-6.5:** 66–67
- Piston rod load, **6.1-6.5:** 29
- Piston rod packing drip, **8.1-8.5:** 19
 - installation, **8.1-8.5:** 18
- Piston rod packing installation, **6.1-6.5:** 73
 - allowance for expansion of packing, **6.1-6.5:** 74
 - chemical packings, **6.1-6.5:** 75
 - drip, **6.1-6.5:** 75
 - gland adjustment, **6.1-6.5:** 75
 - hydraulic piston packing, **6.1-6.5:** 75–76
 - lubrication of packing, **6.1-6.5:** 75
 - metallic piston-ring-type packing, **6.1-6.5:** 77
 - molded ring packings, **6.1-6.5:** 75
 - phenolic piston ring packing, **6.1-6.5:** 78, 78t.
 - piston packing, **6.1-6.5:** 75–78
- Piston type, **8.1-8.5:** 2f., 4
- Piston valves, **8.1-8.5:** 6, 6f.
- Pit covers, **2.3:** 66, 74
- Pitot pump, flexibly coupled, single stage, frame mounted, **1.1-1.2:** 37 f.
- Pitot tube (rotating casing) pump icon, **1.1-1.2:** 81 f.
- Pitot tube pump, **1.1-1.2:** 37 f.

- Pitot tube pumps, **1.1-1.2:** 7, **1.3:** 1, 3f., 131
 - bearing housing, **1.3:** 132
 - configuration, **1.3:** 136
 - cross section, **1.3:** 132f.
 - end bell, **1.3:** 133
 - flow considerations, **1.3:** 137
 - high vapor pressure fluid applications, **1.3:** 136
 - hydraulic theory, **1.3:** 134
 - maintenance, **1.3:** 137
 - manifold hydrostatic testing, **1.3:** 136
 - manifold, **1.3:** 133
 - mechanical seal, **1.3:** 133, 137
 - performance changes, **1.3:** 134
 - performance, **1.3:** 135f.
 - Pitot tube maintenance, **1.3:** 137
 - Pitot tube, **1.3:** 133
 - pump starting, **1.3:** 136
 - rotating assembly, **1.3:** 133, 133f.
 - rotor and rotor cover maintenance, **1.3:** 137
 - rotor assembly hydrostatic testing, **1.3:** 134
 - rotor assembly, **1.3:** 132
 - rotor case, **1.3:** 133
 - rotor cover, **1.3:** 132
 - rotor, **1.3:** 132
 - solids handling, **1.3:** 136
 - terminology, **1.3:** 132
 - test standards, **1.3:** 134
- Pitot tube, **6.6:** 20
- Plan 101, **5.1-5.6:** 26f., 29f.
- Plan 102, **5.1-5.6:** 29f.
- Plan 111, **5.1-5.6:** 26f., 29f.
- Plan 112, **5.1-5.6:** 26f.
- Plan 113, **5.1-5.6:** 28f.
- Plan 114 – Modified, **5.1-5.6:** 26f.
- Plan 114, **5.1-5.6:** 26f., 30f.
- Plan 115, **5.1-5.6:** 26f.
- Plan 121, **5.1-5.6:** 28f.
- Plan 122, **5.1-5.6:** 28f.
- Plan 123, **5.1-5.6:** 29f.
- Plan 125, **5.1-5.6:** 28f., 30f.
- Plan 126, **5.1-5.6:** 30f.
- Plan 131, **5.1-5.6:** 27f.
- Plan 132, **5.1-5.6:** 27f.
- Plan 133, **5.1-5.6:** 27f.
- Plan 153, **5.1-5.6:** 27f.
- Plastic fluid, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 39, 39f.
- Plastics, defined, **9.1-9.5:** 24
- Plotting test results, **7.6:** 13, 14f.
- Plunger load, **6.1-6.5:** 29
- Plunger or piston speed, **6.1-6.5:** 27
- Plunger or piston velocity, **8.1-8.5:** 10
- Plunger packing installation
 - See also Piston rod packing installation
- Plunger packing installation, **8.1-8.5:** 18
- Plunger pumps, **6.1-6.5:** 1, 2f.
 - typical service, **6.1-6.5:** 66–67
- Plunger type, **8.1-8.5:** 4
- P_{mot} . See Total input power
- Polar moment of inertia, defined, **9.6.8:** 61
- Pole (N-S), defined, **4.1-4.6:** 11, **5.1-5.6:** 18
- Poles, defined, **9.6.8:** 61
- Polychloroprene (neoprene), **12.1-12.6:** 68
- Polymerizing liquids, temperature monitoring of, **9.6.9:** 7
- Polyurethane, **12.1-12.6:** 68
- Popping pressure. See Cracking pressure
- Positive displacement pumps, **9.1-9.5:** 12, **9.6.9:** 6
 - general designations, **9.1-9.5:** 12
 - materials, **9.1-9.5:** 12
 - reciprocating, **9.1-9.5:** 13
 - rotary pumps, **9.1-9.5:** 12
- Positive thrust, defined, **4.1-4.6:** 11
- Power (P)
 - correction to (calculation), **3.6:** 14
 - defined, **3.1-3.5:** 22, **3.6:** 7, **11.6:** 10
 - measurement by dynamometer or torque shaft, **3.6:** 24
 - measurement by electric meters and transformers, **3.6:** 24
 - measurements, **3.6:** 24
- Power curves, **9.6.7:** 20
- Power curves, flat, **9.6.5:** 5
- Power definitions, **12.1-12.6:** 36–37
- Power drive end, defined, **5.1-5.6:** 18
- Power end
 - connecting rod, **6.1-6.5:** 21, 21f.
 - crankpin bearing, **6.1-6.5:** 22, 22f.
 - crankshaft, **6.1-6.5:** 19, 19f.
 - crosshead extension (plunger extension), **6.1-6.5:** 23, 23f.
 - defined, **1.1-1.2:** 42, 42 f.
 - frame extension, **6.1-6.5:** 24, 24f.
 - main bearing, **6.1-6.5:** 21, 21f., 22f.
 - parts, **6.1-6.5:** 16f.–18f., 19, 20t., 24
 - power crosshead, **6.1-6.5:** 22, 22f.
 - power frame, **6.1-6.5:** 19, 19f.
 - wrist pin bearing, **6.1-6.5:** 23f., 23
 - wrist pin, **6.1-6.5:** 23, 23f.
- Power input at pump coupling equation, **9.6.7:** 18
- Power measurements
 - calibrated electric motors, **6.6:** 22
 - calibrated laboratory-type electric meters and transformers, **6.6:** 22
 - calibration of strain gauge torque measuring device, **6.6:** 22
 - calibration of torsion dynamometer, **6.6:** 21
 - methods, **6.6:** 21
- Power meters, **9.6.5:** 5, **9.6.9:** 6
- Power monitoring, **9.6.5:** 4, **9.6.9:** 5
 - alarm limits, **9.6.5:** 6
 - and flat power curves, **9.6.5:** 5
 - and miscellaneous causes of power changes, **9.6.5:** 5
 - and monitoring of operating condition, **9.6.5:** 5
 - and power changes, **9.6.9:** 6
 - by electrical current, **9.6.5:** 5

- Power monitoring — *Continued*
 - by power meter, **9.6.5**: 5
 - by strain gauges, **9.6.5**: 5
 - by torque meter, **9.6.5**: 5
 - condition indicators, **9.6.9**: 23t.
 - control limits, **9.6.9**: 6
 - frequency, **9.6.9**: 5t., 6
 - instrumentation and systems used for, **9.6.9**: 5
 - means of, **9.6.5**: 5
- Power monitors, in bearing wear monitoring, **9.6.5**: 21
- Power pumps, **9.1-9.5**: 13
 - all iron, **9.1-9.5**: 13
 - bronze fitted, **9.1-9.5**: 14
- Power, **2.1-2.2**: 36, **6.1-6.5**: 28
 - defined, **1.1-1.2**: 72, **6.6**: 7
- P_p . See Pump input power
- Practices, **50.7**: 3
 - Process Industry Practices (PIP), **50.7**: 3
 - RESP73 H/V data sheets, **50.7**: 8, 10 f.
- Precautions, **4.1-4.6**: 12, **9.6.4**: 3
- Preface, **2.1-2.2**: 1
- Preferred measurement units and conversion factors, **9.1-9.5**: 1 t.
- Preferred operating region (POR), **9.6.3**: 1
 - related to specific speed, **9.6.3**: 1, 1t.
- Preinstallation hydrostatic test, **9.6.5**: 54
 - control limits, **9.6.5**: 54
 - frequency, **9.6.5**: 54
 - means of, **9.6.5**: 54
- Pressure (p), **6.1-6.5**: 27–28, **8.1-8.5**: 10
 - acceleration (p_{acc}), defined, **7.8**: 3
 - defined, **3.1-3.5**: 19, **3.6**: 3, **6.6**: 5
 - differential, **9.6.9**: 12
 - discharge (p_d), defined, **7.8**: 3
 - discharge (p_d), **9.6.9**: 11
 - friction loss (pf), defined, **7.8**: 3
 - loop manifold connecting pressure taps, **3.6**: 22 f., 23
 - measurement by gauges, **3.6**: 23 f.
 - measurement by means of calibrated gauges, **3.6**: 23, 23 f.
 - measurement of, **3.6**: 22, 22 f.
 - precautions in measuring, **3.6**: 22
 - pressure tap opening with corrosion-related plug, **3.6**: 22 f., 22
 - suction, **9.6.9**: 11
 - suction, maximum allowable ($p_{s,max}$), defined, **7.8**: 3
 - suction, rated suction, defined, **7.8**: 3
 - total system discharge, defined, **7.8**: 4
 - welded-on pressure tap opening, **3.6**: 22 f., 22
- Pressure boundary leakage condition monitoring failure modes, **9.6.9**: 21t.
- Pressure buildup leakage monitoring, **9.6.9**: 10, 10t.
- Pressure decay observation, **4.1-4.6**: 27
- Pressure gauge, **7.8**: 13, **9.6.9**: 11
- Pressure gauges, **7.8**: 12–13
- Pressure gradient factor (K_h), **1.3**: 30
- Pressure measurement
 - by calibrated gauges, **6.6**: 21
 - by gauges, **6.6**: 21
 - by other methods, **6.6**: 21
 - gauge connections, **6.6**: 21f.
 - pressure tap location, **6.6**: 20
- Pressure monitoring, **9.6.5**: 13, **9.6.9**: 11
 - alarm limits, **9.6.5**: 14
 - by pressure gauges, **9.6.5**: 13
 - by pressure transducers, **9.6.5**: 13
 - condition indicators, **9.6.9**: 26t.
 - control limits, **9.6.9**: 11
 - differential pressure, **9.6.9**: 12
 - discharge pressure, **9.6.9**: 11
 - frequency, **9.6.9**: 5t., 11
 - means of monitoring, **9.6.5**: 13, **9.6.9**: 11
 - reasons for monitoring, **9.6.9**: 11
 - shutdown limits, **9.6.5**: 14
 - suction pressure, **9.6.9**: 11
- Pressure relief valves external, **3.1-3.5**: 63
 - integral, **3.1-3.5**: 63
 - return-to-source, **3.1-3.5**: 63
- Pressure tap location above liquid level and equal to atmospheric pressure, **40.6**: 18
 - above liquid level and not equal to atmospheric pressure, **40.6**: 18
- Pressure tapping, one (minimum requirement), **40.6**: 16 f.
- Pressure taps, **40.6**: 15
 - correction for height difference, **40.6**: 17
 - diameter, **40.6**: 15
 - static, **40.6**: 15
- Pressure transducers, **9.6.9**: 11
- Pressure/safety relief valve, **7.6**: 10
- Pressure-containing parts, **14.6**: 38
- Pressure-retaining component failure, **9.6.9**: 5
- Pre-swirl, **9.8**: 49, 66
- Primary containment, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 18
- Priming, **8.1-8.5**: 16
- Principal symbols, **2.1-2.2**: 28 t.
- Procedure, **9.6.4**: 2
- Process, **9.6.9**: 27
 - defined, **9.6.5**: 55
- Processing applications, **12.1-12.6**: 45
- Product description section, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 15
 - auxiliaries (driver, shafting, etc.), **1.4**: 15
 - auxiliaries, **2.4**: 16
 - configuration, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 15
 - identification plate, **1.4**: 15, 15 f.
 - nameplate information, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 16
 - nomenclature, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 16
 - parts, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 16
 - pump, **2.4**: 16
 - support systems, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 1
- Product-lubricated bearings, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Product-lubricated pumps. See Open line-shaft pumps
- Program eligibility, **40.7**: 2
 - determination of, **40.7**: 2

- Program guide for HI pump test laboratory approval (normative), **40.7**: 1
 - definitions and nomenclature, **40.7**: 1
 - history, **40.7**: 1
 - introduction, **40.7**: 1
 - Program Manager defined, **40.7**: 1
 - program marketing, **40.7**: 14
 - program overview, **40.7**: 2
 - purpose and scope, **40.7**: 1
 - responsibilities, **40.7**: 2
- Progressing cavity pumps, **1.3**: 124, **3.1-3.5**: 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f.
- Protection against seepage or flood, **8.1-8.5**: 16
- Proximity probes
 - in shaft position monitoring, **9.6.5**: 19
 - in vibration monitoring, **9.6.5**: 15
- Proximity sensing devices, in bearing wear monitoring, **9.6.5**: 21
- p_s . See Inlet pressure
 - See also Suction pressure
 - See also Total suction pressure
- Pseudo-plastic fluid, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 39, 40f.
- Publicity materials and press releases, **40.7**: 14
- Pulp and paper stock pumps, **9.6.1**: 11
- Pulsating flow, **7.8**: 8, 9f
- Pulsation dampener, **7.8**: 13, 14f
- Pump acceptance tests, **14.6**: 10
 - acceptance grade tolerances, **14.6**: 11
 - conditions, **14.6**: 11
 - guarantees, **14.6**: 11
 - maximum permissible measurement device uncertainty, **11.6**: 36 t.
 - maximum permissible measurement device uncertainty, **14.6**: 13 t.
 - measurement uncertainty, **14.6**: 12
 - overall measurement uncertainty, **14.6**: 13
 - permissible amplitude of fluctuations per grade, **11.6**: 35 t.
 - permissible amplitude of fluctuations per grade, **14.6**: 12, 12 t.
 - See also Test tolerances, reasons for
- Pump as turbine (PAT) application, **2.3**: 55, 56 f., 57 f.
- Pump as turbine (PAT) , **1.1-1.2**: 7, **1.3**: 114, 115f., 117
 - hydraulic power recovery turbine (HPRT), **1.3**: 115
 - mechanical safety, **1.3**: 116
 - total available exhaust head (TAEH), **1.3**: 117
 - total required exhaust head (TREH), **1.3**: 117
 - turbine specific speed (NST), **1.3**: 115
- Pump bell throat, velocities in, **9.8**: 67
- Pump characteristic curves, **9.6.7**: 1
- Pump classifications, **1.3**: 110
 - between-bearings (type BB) types and classifications, **1.3**: 110, 112f.
 - industry segments, **1.3**: 110
 - overhung (type OH) types and classifications, **1.3**: 110, 111f.
 - rotodynamic centrifugal pumps, **1.3**: 110
 - rotodynamic vertical pumps, **1.3**: 110
 - service applications, **1.3**: 113
 - vertically suspended (type VS) types and classifications, **1.3**: 110, 112f.
- Pump data sheets. See Data sheets
- Pump data transaction set, **50.7**: 10
 - recommended, extended, and unsupported use, **50.7**: 18
- Pump data transactions
 - and equipment life cycle work process, **50.7**: 4, 5f.
 - and information flows, **50.7**: 4, 6f.
 - key document types, **50.7**: 7
 - software system types, **50.7**: 6f., 7
- Pump design general, **9.1-9.5**: 7
 - definition and calculation, **11.6**: 47
- Pump dimension letter designations, **1.1-1.2**: 59, 63 f.
- Pump displacement, **8.1-8.5**: 9
 - defined, **6.6**: 2, **7.6**: 4
 - for double piston pumps with tail rods, **6.6**: 4
 - for double piston pumps without tail rods, **6.6**: 2
 - for single-acting pump, **6.6**: 2
- Pump efficiency (η_p) , **6.1-6.5**: 29, **8.1-8.5**: 12, **11.6**: 45, **40.6**: 11
 - calculation, **3.6**: 14
 - definition and formula, **1.1-1.2**: 72, **2.1-2.2**: 36, **3.1-3.5**: 23, **3.6**: 7, **6.6**: 7, **12.1-12.6**: 37, **40.6**: 11
 - equations for determining, **40.6**: 11
 - positive displacement versus single-stage rotodynamics, **3.1-3.5**: 43f.
- Pump efficiency testing, **40.6**: 6
 - general, **40.6**: 7
 - maximum permissible measurement device uncertainty (systematic), **40.6**: 7
 - maximum permissible measurement device uncertainty, **40.6**: 8 t.
 - measurement uncertainty, **40.6**: 7
 - permissible amplitude of fluctuation, **40.6**: 7 t.
 - permissible fluctuations (random fluctuations), **40.6**: 7
- Pump Energy Index (PEI), **40.6**: 21
- Pump head
 - various methods to determine pump total head, **40.6**: 13
- Pump head, determination, **40.6**: 14 f.
 - horizontal nonsubmerged, **40.6**: 14 f.
 - vertical submerged, **40.6**: 14 f.
- Pump icons, **1.1-1.2**: 11, 73, 74 f.–81 f.
- Pump industry segments and applications, **1.3**: 3f., 3
- Pump inlet disturbances, **9.8**: 65
 - free surface vortices, **9.8**: 65–66, 66f., 68f.
 - pre-swirl, **9.8**: 66
 - subsurface vortices, **9.8**: 66
 - velocities in pump bell throat, **9.8**: 67
- Pump input (shaft) power (P_p), **6.1-6.5**: 28
 - brake horsepower, defined, **2.1-2.2**: 36
 - calculation, **3.6**: 13
 - defined, **1.1-1.2**: 72, **3.1-3.5**: 22, **3.6**: 7, **6.6**: 7, **12.1-12.6**: 36

- Pump intake design, **9.8**: 1
 - design objectives, **9.8**: 8–10
 - preferred terms, **9.8**: 2t.–5t.
 - units and symbols, **9.8**: 5t.–8t.
- Pump length, **2.1-2.2**: 26, 27 f.
- Pump location, **8.1-8.5**: 16
- Pump materials of construction, **9.1-9.5**: 5
 - abrasion-resistant cast irons, **9.1-9.5**: 17
 - aluminum and aluminum alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 21
 - and galvanic corrosion, **9.1-9.5**: 8
 - and temperature of liquid pumped, **9.1-9.5**: 7
 - austenitic ductile iron, **9.1-9.5**: 17
 - austenitic gray cast iron, **9.1-9.5**: 17
 - carbon steel, **9.1-9.5**: 17
 - chemical and physical properties, **9.1-9.5**: 7
 - chromium (ferric) stainless steel, **9.1-9.5**: 18
 - chromium-nickel (austenitic) stainless steel, **9.1-9.5**: 18
 - common polymer materials of construction for various liquids, **9.1-9.5**: 24
 - consideration factors, **9.1-9.5**: 5
 - copper and copper alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 19
 - ductile iron, **9.1-9.5**: 17
 - duplex stainless steels, **9.1-9.5**: 18
 - gray cast iron, **9.1-9.5**: 16
 - high-alloy steels, **9.1-9.5**: 18
 - high-silicon cast irons, **9.1-9.5**: 17
 - introduction, **9.1-9.5**: 5
 - low-alloy steels, **9.1-9.5**: 18
 - malleable cast iron, **9.1-9.5**: 17
 - minimizing galvanic corrosion, **9.1-9.5**: 8
 - nickel and nickel alloys, **9.1-9.5**: 20
 - other metals and coating systems, **9.1-9.5**: 22
 - relative ranking of adhesive wear resistance of wrought materials, **9.1-9.5**: 11 t.
 - super duplex stainless steels, **9.1-9.5**: 18
- Pump mechanical efficiency, **6.1-6.5**: 29
- Pump output (useful) power (P_u), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 36
- Pump output power (P_w)
 - calculation, **3.6**: 13
 - definition and equation, **3.6**: 7
 - defined, **1.1-1.2**: 72, **2.1-2.2**: 36, **3.1-3.5**: 22, **6.1-6.5**: 29, **6.6**: 7, **11.6**: 11
- Pump performance after impeller diameter change, **1.3**: 69, 70f.
 - impeller with angled outside diameter, **1.3**: 70f.
 - impeller with straight outside diameter, **1.3**: 70f.
 - trimming impeller vanes, **1.3**: 71, 71f.
- Pump performance curve vs. system curve, **1.3**: 67, 67f.
- Pump piping (metering pumps)
 - definitions of pump application terms, **7.8**: 2–4
 - example, **7.8**: 2f
 - functions, **7.8**: 1
 - purpose, **7.8**: 1
 - scope, **7.8**: 1
- Pump piping (rotodynamic pumps)
 - acoustic shock wave, **9.6.6**: 29
 - air release valves, **9.6.6**: 44
 - air release valves, **9.6.6**: 44
 - CFD. see computational fluid dynamics
 - check valve, **9.6.6**: 15
 - check valves, **9.6.6**: 40
 - cold spring, **9.6.6**: 18
 - cold spring, defined, **9.6.6**: 18
 - computational fluid dynamics, **9.6.6**: 11, 13
 - constant-effort spring supports, **9.6.6**: 32, 33f.
 - Darcy-Weisbach equation, **9.6.6**: 26
 - design considerations, **9.6.6**: 18
 - devices to improve flow to pump, **9.6.6**: 41
 - effects of misalignment between pump nozzle and connection piping, **9.6.6**: 17
 - effects of nozzle loads on pump operation, **9.6.6**: 16
 - expansion joint types, **9.6.6**: 36
 - expansion joints and couplings, **9.6.6**: 36
 - expansion joints, application, **9.6.6**: 38
 - expansion joints, bolting arrangement, **9.6.6**: 38f.
 - expansion joints, caution in use, **9.6.6**: 37
 - expansion joints, elastomer, **9.6.6**: 36
 - expansion joints, metal bellows, **9.6.6**: 37f., 37
 - expansion joints, rubber bellows, **9.6.6**: 36, 37f.
 - expansion joints, slip or packed, **9.6.6**: 36
 - expansion joints, slip/packing, **9.6.6**: 36f.
 - expansion joints, tie rods, **9.6.6**: 38
 - expansion joints, universal or double expansion, **9.6.6**: 37
 - field adjustment, **9.6.6**: 18
 - final installation, **9.6.6**: 18
 - flowcharts for use of standard hydraulic considerations, **9.6.6**: xi
 - flowcharts for use of standard mechanical considerations, **9.6.6**: x
 - foot valve installation, **9.6.6**: 40
 - foot valves, **9.6.6**: 40, 41f.
 - Hazen-Williams equation, **9.6.6**: 26
 - H-Q curve, **9.6.6**: 24, 26
 - Inlet (suction) piping examples, **9.6.6**: 5f., 6f., 7f., 8f., 9f., 12f.
 - Inlet (suction) piping and computational fluid dynamics (CFD), **9.6.6**: 11
 - Inlet (suction) piping and entrained air, **9.6.6**: 2
 - Inlet (suction) piping and entrained gas, **9.6.6**: 2
 - Inlet (suction) piping and physical hydraulic model study, **9.6.6**: 11
 - Inlet (suction) piping concentric reducer, **9.6.6**: 3
 - Inlet (suction) piping effect of piping-generated swirl, **9.6.6**: 3
 - Inlet (suction) piping for fluids close to the vapor pressure, **9.6.6**: 3
 - Inlet (suction) piping minimum required straight pipe length (L₂) before pump suction inlet, **9.6.6**: 4t.
 - Inlet (suction) piping pipe size and velocity, **9.6.6**: 2
 - Inlet (suction) piping pump station retrofit or modification, **9.6.6**: 14
 - Inlet (suction) piping pump suction elbows, **9.6.6**: 13
 - Inlet (suction) piping requirements, **9.6.6**: 2

Pump piping (rotodynamic pumps) — *Continued*

- inspection of spring indicators, **9.6.6:** 18
- installation, **9.6.6:** 17
- list of acronyms, **9.6.6:** 22
- Newton's second law of motion, **9.6.6:** 29
- outlet (discharge) piping required straight pipe lengths, **9.6.6:** 15
- outlet (discharge) piping requirements pipe size/velocity requirements, **9.6.6:** 14
- outlet (discharge) piping requirements, recommended valves, **9.6.6:** 15
- outlet (discharge) piping requirements, water hammer, **9.6.6:** 16
- parallel operation, **9.6.6:** 18
- parallel operation, **9.6.6:** 18, 19, 20f., 21f.
- parallel pump installation, **9.6.6:** 19f.
- physical hydraulic model study conditions for, **9.6.6:** 11
- pipe guides, **9.6.6:** 34, 34f.
- pipe nozzle alignment/pipe expansion load, **9.6.6:** 16
- pipe restraints, **9.6.6:** 34
- pipe supports and restraints, factors in design, **9.6.6:** 32
- pipe supports and restraints, friction from supports, **9.6.6:** 35
- pipe supports for vertical loads, **9.6.6:** 32, 33f.
- pipe supports/anchors, **9.6.6:** 17
- piping for suction lift applications design recommendations, **9.6.6:** 42
- piping for suction lift applications, **9.6.6:** 42
- placement of restraints and stops, **9.6.6:** 32
- pressure pulsation and acoustic resonance, **9.6.6:** 45-46
- pressure wave calculation, **9.6.6:** 30, 31t.
- pump analysis, **9.6.6:** 17
- pump nozzle flange analysis, **9.6.6:** 17
- pump station retrofit or modification examples, **9.6.6:** 14
- pump suction piping/wet-well connection, **9.6.6:** 13
- references, **9.6.6:** 21
- reflection points, defined, **9.6.6:** 46
- required straight pipe lengths, **9.6.6:** 3
- self-priming bypass, **9.6.6:** 43f.
- shut-off valves, **9.6.6:** 15
- solid hanger supports, **9.6.6:** 32, 33f.
- solids/slurry, **9.6.6:** 43
- spring supporta, guidelines for proper installation, **9.6.6:** 34
- spring supports, **9.6.6:** 34, 35f.
- strainers, **9.6.6:** 40
- surge pressure, **9.6.6:** 28
- system curves, calculation, **9.6.6:** 24
- system curves, factors that affect head loss, **9.6.6:** 25
- system curves, friction loss calculations, **9.6.6:** 25
- tie rods, design recommendations, **9.6.6:** 39
- triple-duty valve, **9.6.6:** 15f., 15
- true anchors, **9.6.6:** 34
- typical temporary strainer, **9.6.6:** 41f.
- undesirable effect of a horizontal elbow mounted directly on suction flange, **9.6.6:** 10f.
- undisturbed flow, defined, **9.6.6:** 2
- water hammer, **9.6.6:** 16, 28, 29, 31
- Pump pressures, **2.1-2.2:** 37, **3.1-3.5:** 20
 - definitions, **1.1-1.2:** 72, **12.1-12.6:** 37
- Pump rate of flow, **8.1-8.5:** 7
- Pump rotor critical speed, **9.6.8:** 38
- Pump rotor vibration, **9.6.8:** 38
- Pump selection
 - driver sizing (CMP), **5.1-5.6:** 37
 - efficiency, **5.1-5.6:** 38
 - entrained, noncondensable gas, **5.1-5.6:** 38
 - equations used for finding equivalent water performance and estimating viscous pump input power, **9.6.7:** 15
 - example (metric units), **9.6.7:** 17
 - example (US customary units), **9.6.7:** 17
 - hydraulic sizing, **5.1-5.6:** 36
 - magnetic drive and driver sizing (MDP), **5.1-5.6:** 37
 - material selection, **5.1-5.6:** 37
 - operation range, **5.1-5.6:** 37
 - preliminary selection of a pump for given head, rate of flow, and viscosity conditions, **9.6.7:** 15
 - pressure rating, **5.1-5.6:** 37
 - thermal effects on NPSH and drive section, **5.1-5.6:** 37
- Pump selection, on intake design, **9.8:** 104, 105f.–106f.
- Pump setting, **2.1-2.2:** 26, 27 f.
- Pump shaft power (P_p), defined, **11.6:** 46
- Pump shaft rotation, **2.1-2.2:** 21
- Pump sound, as indicator of performance, **9.6.9:** 1
- Pump speeds, **8.1-8.5:** 13
- Pump suction hydraulics, computational fluid dynamics on, **9.8:** 55
- Pump technology designations, **50.7:** 11, 18
 - example, **50.7:** 18, 19 t.
- Pump test equipment, **40.7:** 10
 - instrumentation calibration, **40.7:** 10
 - performance and calibration, **40.7:** 10
- Pump test laboratories, **40.7:** 3
 - location, **40.7:** 3
 - types, **40.7:** 3
- Pump tested on a standardized installation inlet measuring section, **40.6:** 14
- Pump torque versus speed characteristic, **9.6.7:** 25
- Pump torque, **6.1-6.5:** 29
 - characteristics, **6.1-6.5:** 43
 - defined, **3.1-3.5:** 23
 - requirements, **6.1-6.5:** 44
- Pump total discharge head, defined, **2.1-2.2:** 33
- Pump total head (H) [$H_{t,x}$], defined, **2.1-2.2:** 33, **12.1-12.6:** 35, **40.6:** 17
- Pump total head calculation, **40.6:** 18
- Pump type BB1: Horizontal, axial split, single and two stage, between-bearings design, **1.1-1.2:** 78

- Pump type BB1: Horizontal, axial split, single and two stage, between-bearings design — *Continued*
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 78 f.
- Pump type BB2: Horizontal, radial split, single and two stage, between-bearings design, **1.1-1.2**: 78
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 78 f.
- Pump type BB3: Horizontal, axial split, multistage, between-bearings design, **1.1-1.2**: 79
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 79 f.
- Pump type BB4: Horizontal, radially split, multistage, between-bearings design, **1.1-1.2**: 79
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 79 f.
- Pump type BB5: Horizontal, radially split, multistage, double casing, between-bearings design, **1.1-1.2**: 79
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 79 f.
- Pump type CP1: Close-coupled sealless with canned motor, 81
 icon, 81 f.
- Pump type CP2: Close-coupled horizontal in-line, **1.1-1.2**: 82
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 82 f.
- Pump type CP3: Flexibly coupled horizontal in-line, **1.1-1.2**: 82
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 82 f.
- Pump type OH0: Horizontal, frame mounted, flexibly coupled single stage, overhung design, **1.1-1.2**: 74
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 74 f.
- Pump type OH00: Horizontal flexibly coupled, axial flow, single stage, overhung design, **1.1-1.2**: 74
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 74 f.
- Pump type OH1: Horizontal, foot mounted, single stage, overhung design, **1.1-1.2**: 74
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 74 f.
- Pump type OH10, 78 icon, **1.1-1.2**: 78 f.
- Pump type OH11, 78 icon, **1.1-1.2**: 78 f.
- Pump type OH12, 78 icon, **1.1-1.2**: 78 f.
- Pump type OH2: Horizontal, centerline mounted, single stage, overhung design, **1.1-1.2**: 75
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 75 f.
- Pump type OH3: Vertical, in-line mounted, single stage, with integral bearing bracket, **1.1-1.2**: 75
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 75 f.
- Pump type OH4: Vertical, in-line mounted, single stage, rigidly coupled to the driver shaft, **1.1-1.2**: 76
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 76 f.
- Pump type OH5: Vertical, in-line mounted, single stage, close coupled to the driver shaft, **1.1-1.2**: 76
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 76 f.
- Pump type OH6: High-speed, integral gear driven, single stage, overhung design, **1.1-1.2**: 77
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 77 f.
- Pump type OH8A, **1.1-1.2**: 77
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 77 f.
- Pump type OH8B, **1.1-1.2**: 77
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 77 f.
- Pump type OH9, **1.1-1.2**: 78
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 78 f.
- Pump type RT1: Overhung, close-coupled, side channel design, **1.1-1.2**: 80
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 80 f.
- Pump type RT2: Overhung, close-coupled, peripheral design, **1.1-1.2**: 80
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 80 f.
- Pump type RT3: Between-bearing, flexibly coupled, side channel design, **1.1-1.2**: 80
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 80 f.
- Pump type RT4: Between-bearing, flexibly coupled, peripheral design, **1.1-1.2**: 81
 icon, **2.1-2.2**: 81 f.
- Pump type tree diagram, **9.1-9.5**: 4 f.
- Pump type VS4, **1.1-1.2**: 80
- Pump type VS5, **1.1-1.2**: 80
- Pump types and factors that influence efficiency, **20.3**: 5 t.
- Pump types BB1–5, allowable bearing housing vibration, **9.6.4**: 8 f.
- Pump types excluded from ANSI/HI **11.6**, **11.6**: 2
- Pump types OH1–5 and OH7, allowable bearing housing vibration, **9.6.4**: 8 f.
- Pump types VS1–8, allowable bearing housing vibration, **9.6.4**: 8 f.
- Pump volumetric efficiency (η_v), definition and formula, **3.1-3.5**: 19, **3.6**: 2
- Pump vs. system curves, **2.3**: 31, 31 f.
- Pump wear, **9.6.9**: 5
- Pump, defined, **14.6**: 1
- Pumpage entrained gases, **20.3**: 2
 slurries, **20.3**: 2
 solids size, **20.3**: 2
 viscosity, **20.3**: 2
- Pumping chamber, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
- Pumping system failure categorizing probability of, **9.6.9**: 4, 5t.
 factors used in determining probability of, **9.6.9**: 4
- Pumping system requirements, **2.3**: 30
- Pumping systems, modification of existing, **9.8**: 96
- Pumps
 characteristics, **4.1-4.6**: 21
 materials, **4.1-4.6**: 18
 ratings, **4.1-4.6**: 20
- Pumps – general guidelines, **9.1-9.5**: 1
 applicable pumps, **9.1-9.5**: 1
 conversion factors, **9.1-9.5**: 1
 preferred measurement units, **9.1-9.5**: 1
 scope, **9.1-9.5**: 1
- Pumps tested with fittings, **40.6**: 17
- Pump-to-driver shafting, **2.3**: 28
- Purpose, **11.6**: 1, **50.7**: 1
- Pusher seals, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 37
- Pusher split seals, **12.1-12.6**: 82
- p_v . See Velocity pressure
- P_w . See Pump output power
- p_z . See Elevation pressure
- p_Δ . See Differential pressure

- ρ_{Δ} . See also Total differential pressure
- Q. See Rate of flow
See also Pump rate of flow
- Quantities (terminology definitions), **14.6:** 2, 2 t. , **40.6:** 2 t.
- Quote, **50.7:** 13
and R compliance, **50.7:** 15
and R/D compliance, **50.7:** 15
and R/D/S compliance, **50.7:** 15
and R/D/S/A compliance, **50.7:** 16
- R compliance, **50.7:** 15, 16f., 17 t.
- R/D compliance, **50.7:** 15, 16f., 17t.
and HI-EDE implementation, **50.7:** 20
R/D/S compliance, **50.7:** 15, 16f., 17 t.
- R/D/S field designations, **50.7:** 11, 12, 13, 17 t.
- R/D/S/A compliance, **50.7:** 16, 16 f., 17t.
and R compliance, **50.7:** 15
and R/D compliance, **50.7:** 15
and R/D/S compliance, **50.7:** 15
and R/D/S/A compliance, **50.7:** 16
Request for Quotation (RFQ), **50.7:** 13
- Radial flow impeller, **2.1-2.2:** 19
- Radial flow pumps, **1.1-1.2:** 10 f., 10
- Radial load, **1.3:** 34
- Radial load, defined, **5.1-5.6:** 15
- Radial multistage in-line pump, **2.1-2.2:** 11
- Radial seal, defined, **3.1-3.5:** 18
- Radial synchronous magnetic couplings, **4.1-4.6:** 1
- Radial thrust, **2.3:** 7
calculation for volute pumps, **1.3:** 15
circular (concentric) casing distribution, **1.3:** 19f.
double volute distribution, **1.3:** 16, 18f.
excessive, **1.3:** 72
single volute distribution, **1.3:** 16, 16f., 17f.
- Ramps, **9.8:** 85
- Rare earth magnets, **4.1-4.6:** 25
- Rate of flow (capacity) (Q or q) [Q], **6.1-6.5:** 24, **8.1-8.5:** 7
correction to (calculation), **3.6:** 14
defined, **1.1-1.2:** 68, **2.1-2.2:** 30, **3.1-3.5:** 18, **3.6:** 2, **6.6:** 5, **12.1-12.6:** 33
measurement by miscellaneous methods, **3.6:** 20
measurement by volume, **3.6:** 20
measurement by weight, **3.6:** 20
- Rate of flow measurement
by calibration columns, **7.8:** 15
by displacement-type meters, **6.6:** 18
by flowmeters, **7.8:** 16
by head-type rate meters, **6.6:** 18
by nozzles, **6.6:** 19
by other methods, **6.6:** 20
by Pitot tubes, **6.6:** 20
by thin square-edged orifice plate, **6.6:** 19
by venturi meter, **6.6:** 19
by volume, **6.6:** 17
by weight, **6.6:** 17
requirements for static pressure tapings, **6.6:** 19f.
- Rated condition point [r or d], **3.6:** 2
defined, **1.1-1.2:** 70, **2.1-2.2:** 34, **6.6:** 2, **7.6:** 4, **12.1-12.6:** 35
- Rated discharge pressure, defined, **1.1-1.2:** 73
- Rated point. See Guarantee point
- Rated pressure, **14.6:** 38
- Rated speed [n_d], defined, **1.1-1.2:** 68, defined, **2.1-2.2:** 31
- Rate-of-flow monitoring, **9.6.5:** 19, **9.6.9:** 13
alarm limits, **9.6.5:** 19
condition indicators, **9.6.9:** 26t.
control limits, **9.6.9:** 13
frequency, **9.6.9:** 5t., 13
means of, **9.6.5:** 19
measuring devices, **9.6.9:** 13
- Ratio of disk friction losses to useful power, **9.6.7:** 20f.
- Ratio of distance from casing wall to impeller shroud, **1.3:** 23
- Ratio of runaway speed (n_{r0}) to normal speed (n_{no}), **1.4:** 26
- Rayleigh-Ritz equation, **9.6.8:** 40
- Reapplying for approval, **40.7:** 9
- Reciprocating power pumps, **6.1-6.5:** 1
cup-type pistons, **6.1-6.5:** 78–79
discharge piping, **6.1-6.5:** 56
foundation bolts, **6.1-6.5:** 68, 68f.
foundation, **6.1-6.5:** 68
inlet system, **6.1-6.5:** 47–56
inspection, **6.1-6.5:** 80
installation, **6.1-6.5:** 68–73
liquid end, **6.1-6.5:** 6, 6f., 7f., 8f., 9f., 10t., 11f.
location, **6.1-6.5:** 67
malfunctions, cause and remedies, **6.1-6.5:** 81t.–83t.
power end, **6.1-6.5:** 14–18f., 20t., 23f.–24
preinstallation considerations, **6.1-6.5:** 67–68
protection against seepage or flood, **6.1-6.5:** 67
right- and left-hand shaft extension, **6.1-6.5:** 3
servicing space, **6.1-6.5:** 68
speeds, **6.1-6.5:** 36–43
starting, **6.1-6.5:** 43–47
storage, **6.1-6.5:** 67
types and nomenclature, **6.1-6.5:** 1
typical services, **6.1-6.5:** 35
- Reciprocating power types, **6.1-6.5:** 1f.
- Reciprocating pump tests
objective of standard, **6.6:** 1
scope of standard, **6.6:** 1
- Reciprocating pumps, **9.1-9.5:** 13
controlled volume, **9.1-9.5:** 14
direct-acting (steam), **9.1-9.5:** 14
power pumps, **9.1-9.5:** 13
- Recirculation valves, **9.6.9:** 8
- Recommended tests. See Optional tests
- Records, **7.6:** 13
- Rectangular intake structures, **9.8:** 11
- Rectangular intakes, **9.8:** 10–16, 56
approach flow patterns, 10, 56–57, 58f.–59f.
design sequence, **9.8:** 16t.
filler wall details, **9.8:** 14f., 15t.

- Rectangular intakes — *Continjuned*
 for shallow liquid source, **9.8**: 100–101, 102f.–103f.
 open versus partitioned structures, **9.8**: 10, 57, 60f.
 recommendations for dimensioning, **9.8**: 11–12
 structure layout, **9.8**: 13f., 15t.
 trash racks and screens, **9.8**: 10–11
- Rectangular wet wells
 anti-rotation baffles, **9.8**: 41
 cleaning procedure, **9.8**: 41
 confined wet-well design, **9.8**: 40, 41f.
 control of sediments, **9.8**: 40
 design of, **9.8**: 87–88, 89f.–92f.
 geometry of, **9.8**: 40
 suction inlet clearance, **9.8**: 41
- Reed critical frequency (RCF) of vertical structures, **9.6.8**: 42
- Reed critical frequency versus static deflection, **9.6.8**: 77f.
- Reed frequency or reed critical frequency (RCF), defined, **9.6.8**: 61
- Reed frequency, **9.6.8**: 38
- Reference and source material, **3.1-3.5**: 70, **4.1-4.6**: 26, **5.1-5.6**: 46, **9.6.2**: 37, **40.6**: 43
 bearings, **5.1-5.6**: 46
 sealless pumps, **5.1-5.6**: 46
- Regenerative turbine pumps, **1.1-1.2**: 4 f., 7, **1.3**: 1, 3f., 126
 applications, **1.3**: 129
 axial thrust, **1.3**: 130
 bucket (impeller channels), **1.3**: 127
 change in flow at constant speed, **1.3**: 129
 change in head at constant speed, **1.3**: 129
 change in speed, **1.3**: 129
 circulatory flow, **1.3**: 127
 dam, **1.3**: 128
 discharge, **1.3**: 128
 efficiency, **1.3**: 130
 flow path, **1.3**: 128f.
 icons, **2.1-2.2**: 80 f.–81 f.
 impeller between bearings, two stage, **1.3**: 127f.
 impeller, **1.3**: 129
 maintenance, **1.3**: 131
 performance, **1.3**: 130f.
 radial thrust, **1.3**: 130
 side channels (flow-through area), **1.3**: 129
 side clearance, **1.3**: 129
 suction, **1.3**: 129
 teeth, **1.3**: 129
 terminology, **1.3**: 127
 types and classifications, **1.3**: 126f.
- Regenerative turbine, between bearings, peripheral pump, **1.1-1.2**: 36 f.
- Regenerative turbine, overhung peripheral pump, **1.1-1.2**: 35 f.
- Regenerative turbine, overhung side channel pump, **1.1-1.2**: 34 f.
- Relief valve, **6.1-6.5**: 57, **8.1-8.5**: 17, **9.6.9**: 8
 defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- Reluctance (*R*), defined, **4.1-4.6**: 11
- Renewal of approval, **40.7**: 6
 audits, **40.7**: 6
- Repeatability, **9.6.9**: 27
 defined, **9.6.5**: 56
- Report, **7.6**: 13
- Reporting of test results, **40.6**: 21
- Required data, **50.7**: 13
 See also R/D/S field designations
- Reseating pressure, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- Reservoirs, **9.8**: 108
- Resistance temperature detectors (RTDs), **9.6.9**: 7
- Resonance, defined, **9.6.8**: 27, 61
- Resonant frequency, defined, **9.6.8**: 27
- Reverse runaway speed versus specific speed, **1.4**: 26 f.
- Reverse runaway speed, **1.3**: 82, **2.3**: 32
- Reverse runaway speed, defined, **1.4**: 26
- Reviewer, defined, **40.7**: 1
- Revolution counter and timer (in rotary speed measurement), **3.6**: 25
- Revolution counters, in speed (rpm) monitoring, **9.6.5**: 20, **9.6.9**: 14
- Reynolds number, **9.8**: 50–51
- Rheopectic fluid, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 40, 40f.
- Right- and left-hand designations, **8.1-8.5**: 2
- Rigid coupling, defined, **9.6.8**: 61
- Rigid foundation, defined, **9.6.8**: 61
- Rigid rotor, defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- Rigidity, **9.6.4**: 19
- Risk, **9.6.8**: 11
 defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- River intakes, **9.8**: 107–108
- Rolling element bearings
 condition monitoring failure modes, **9.6.9**: 15t.
 defect detection of, **9.6.9**: 12
 failure indicated by power monitoring, **9.6.9**: 5
 temperature monitoring, **9.6.5**: 7, **9.6.9**: 7
- Rotameters, **9.6.9**: 13
- Rotameters, in rate-of-flow monitoring, **9.6.5**: 19
- Rotary multiphase pumps in oil and gas application
 integrated multiphase pump packages, **3.1-3.5**: 50
 types, **3.1-3.5**: 50
- Rotary pump tests, **3.6**: 1
- Rotary pumps
 axial piston pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 7
 basic types, **3.1-3.5**: 1, 1f.
 capability tables, **3.1-3.5**: 2
 circumferential piston, **3.1-3.5**: 11
 condition monitoring failure modes, **9.6.9**: 15t.
 condition monitoring indicators, **9.6.9**: 23t.
 consolidated range charts, **3.1-3.5**: 2
 control limits, **9.6.9**: 5
 defined, **3.1-3.5**: 1
 design and application, **3.1-3.5**: 33
 flexible member, **3.1-3.5**: 8
 gear, **3.1-3.5**: 9
 high power detection, **9.6.9**: 6

Rotary pumps — *Continued*

- installation, operation, and maintenance, **3.1-3.5**: 54
- leakage monitoring, **9.6.9**: 9, 10t.
- lobe, **3.1-3.5**: 9
- low power detection, **9.6.9**: 6
- monitoring and control systems, **9.6.9**: 1, 2f., 3f.
- monitoring interval, **9.6.9**: 4
- operating conditions that can affect power, **9.6.9**: 6
- potential failure models, **9.6.9**: 1
- power control limits, **9.6.9**: 6
- pressure monitoring, **9.6.9**: 11
- rate-of-flow monitoring, **9.6.9**: 13
- screw pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 11
- See also* Sealless pumps
- sliding vane (rigid), **3.1-3.5**: 7
- speed (rpm) monitoring, **9.6.9**: 14
- temperature monitoring, **9.6.9**: 7
- vibration monitoring, **9.6.9**: 12
- viscosity and performance in, **9.6.9**: 8
- Rotary pumps advantages, **4.1-4.6**: 13
 - application information. *See* ANSI/HI **3.1-3.5**
 - diagrammatic breakdown of types. *See* ANSI/HI **3.1-3.5**
- Rotary pumps all bronze, **9.1-9.5**: 13
 - all iron, **9.1-9.5**: 13
 - all stainless, **9.1-9.5**: 13
 - and galvanic corrosion, **9.1-9.5**: 13
 - bronze fitted, **9.1-9.5**: 13
 - corrosive nature of liquids effects, **9.1-9.5**: 13
- Rotary speed measurement, **3.6**: 25
- Rotating assembly defined, **1.1-1.2**: 43, **3.1-3.5**: 17
 - terms, **2.1-2.2**: 41
- Rotating disk meters, in rate-of-flow monitoring, **9.6.5**: 16
- Rotation check, **3.1-3.5**: 58
- Rotation speed
 - and flow rate, head, and power, **2.3**: 37
- Rotative speed (formula), **9.6.1**: 17
- Rotodynamic (centrifugal) pumps, **1.3**: 1, 12, 12f., **2.3**: 62, **9.1-9.5**: 14
 - all bronze, **9.1-9.5**: 15
 - all iron, **9.1-9.5**: 15
 - all stainless-steel, **9.1-9.5**: 15
 - between-bearings (BB) type, **1.3**: 1, 33, 33f., 112f.
 - bronze fitted, **9.1-9.5**: 15
 - classifications, **1.3**: 1
 - conversion of kinetic energy to pressure energy, **1.3**: 1
 - overhung (OH) type, **1.3**: 1, 32, 32f., 110, 111f.
 - Pitot tube pumps, **1.3**: 1, 3f., 131
 - regenerative turbines, **1.3**: 1, 3f., 126
 - rigid polymers/composites, **9.1-9.5**: 15
 - specific-composition bronze, **9.1-9.5**: 15
 - stainless-steel fitted, **9.1-9.5**: 15
 - sump pumps, **1.3**: 3f., 137
 - types, **1.3**: 1, 2f.
 - vertically suspended (VS) type, **1.3**: 1, 110, 112f.
- Rotodynamic (centrifugal) slurry pumps. *See* Slurry pumps
- Rotodynamic (radial) pumps. *See* Rotodynamic (centrifugal) pumps
- Rotodynamic (vertical) pump types, **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, axial flow, lineshaft (VS3), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, diffuser, can-mounted (VS6), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, diffuser, deep well (VS1), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, diffuser, double casing, in-line, floor mounted (VS8), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, diffuser, short set (VS1), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, diffuser, submersible, deep well (VS0), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, diffuser, submersible, short set (VS0), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, sump, cantilever (VS5), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, sump, lineshaft (VS4), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, volute, double suction, can type (VS7), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, volute, double suction, wet pit (VS2), **2.4**: 1
 - vertical, volute, multistage axial split, can type (VS7a), **2.4**: 1
- Rotodynamic (vertical) pumps, **9.1-9.5**: 15
 - all bronze, **9.1-9.5**: 16
 - all iron, **9.1-9.5**: 16
 - all stainless-steel, **9.1-9.5**: 16
 - bronze fitted, **9.1-9.5**: 16
 - specific-composition bronze, **9.1-9.5**: 16
 - stainless-steel fitted, **9.1-9.5**: 16
- Rotodynamic centrifugal pump types, **1.4**: 1
 - between-bearing, separately coupled, multistage pumps (BB3, BB4, and BB5), **1.4**: 1
 - between-bearing, separately coupled, one- and two-stage pumps (BB1 and BB2), **1.4**: 1
 - close-coupled pumps (OH5, OH5A, OH6, OH7, OH8A, and OH8B), **1.4**: 1
 - horizontal, flexibly coupled, axial flow, single stage, overhung design (OH00), **1.4**: 1
 - overhung impeller, rigidly coupled pumps (OH4), **1.4**: 1
 - overhung impeller, separately coupled pumps (OH0, OH1, OH1A, OH2, OH3, and OH3A), **1.4**: 1
 - regenerative turbine pumps (RT1, RT2, RT3, and RT4), **1.4**: 1
 - sealless centrifugal pumps (OH9, OH10, OH11, and OH12), **1.4**: 1
 - special-effects pumps (Pitot tube, etc.), **1.4**: 1
 - vertically suspended, separate discharge (sump), volute style (VS4 and VS5), **1.4**: 1
- Rotodynamic centrifugal pumps classification methods, **1.1-1.2**: 1
 - construction drawings, **2.1-2.2**: 11, 12 f.–37 f., 55
 - defined, **2.1-2.2**: 1
 - definitions of pump application terms, **2.1-2.2**: 65
 - dimension letter designations, **2.1-2.2**: 59
 - nomenclature, **2.1-2.2**: 47
 - part names (numerical listing), **2.1-2.2**: 55, 56 t.
 - part names and definitions (alphabetical listing), **2.1-2.2**: 47, 47 t.
 - position of casing and shaft rotation, **2.1-2.2**: 44 f.
 - position of casing, **2.1-2.2**: 44
 - pump dimensions (letter designations), **2.1-2.2**: 59, 59 f.–64 f.
 - scope of standard, **2.1-2.2**: 1

- Rotodynamic centrifugal pumps classification methods —
 - Continued*
 - size, **2.1-2.2**: 11
 - symbols, **2.1-2.2**: 65 t.
 - types, **2.1-2.2**: 1
- Rotodynamic pump affinity rules (formulas), **11.6**: 48
- Rotodynamic pump applications
 - effect of gas on centrifugal pump performance, **2.3**: 52, 55 f.
 - rotative speed limitations, **2.3**: 57, 59 f., 60 f.
 - two-phase flow (liquids with gas), **2.3**: 52
 - vertical pumps as turbines (PATs), **2.3**: 55, 56 f., 57 f.
- Rotodynamic pump classifications, **2.3**: 52
 - between bearings (Type BB), **2.3**: 52, 54 f.
 - overhung (Type OH), **2.3**: 52, 53 f.
 - rotodynamic centrifugal pumps, **2.3**: 52
 - rotodynamic vertical pumps, **2.3**: 52
 - vertically suspended (Type VS), **2.3**: 52, 54 f.
- Rotodynamic pump dynamic response, **9.6.8**: 6
- Rotodynamic pump efficiency prediction, **20.3**: 1
 - examples, **20.3**: 3
 - method used, **20.3**: 3
 - purpose of guideline, **20.3**: 1
- Rotodynamic pump icons, **1.1-1.2**: 73
- Rotodynamic pump types between bearings, **9.6.8**: 9f.
 - overhung, **9.6.8**: 8f.
 - vertically suspended, **9.6.8**: 10f.
- Rotodynamic pump types, **1.1-1.2**: 1
 - between bearings, **2.1-2.2**: 3 f.
 - circulator pumps, **2.1-2.2**: 5 f.
 - circulator, **2.1-2.2**: 7
 - close coupled attributes, **2.1-2.2**: 1
 - close-coupled circulator pumps (CP1 and CP2), **2.1-2.2**: 7
 - flexibly coupled attributes, **2.1-2.2**: 5
 - flexibly coupled circulator pumps (CP3), **2.1-2.2**: 8
 - impeller between-bearings (BB), **2.1-2.2**: 6
 - overhung impeller (OH), **2.1-2.2**: 1
 - overhung impeller attributes, **2.1-2.2**: 6 t.
 - overhung impeller, **2.1-2.2**: 2 f.
 - rigidly coupled attributes, **2.1-2.2**: 5
 - short coupled attributes, **2.1-2.2**: 5
- Rotodynamic pumps
 - affinity rules, **2.3**: 37
 - axial flow, **1.3**: 1, 12, 12f.
 - classifications, **2.3**: 5, 52
 - defined, **1.3**: 1
 - defined, **2.3**: 1
 - flexibility of design, **2.3**: 1
 - materials selection, and corrosion minimization, **2.3**: 80
 - mixed flow, **1.3**: 1, 12, 12f.
 - other configurations, **2.3**: 62
 - pump as turbine (PAT) application, **2.3**: 55, 56 f., 57 f.
 - pump types, **2.3**: 1, 2 f., 3 f.
 - types, **1.3**: 1, 12, 12f.
- Rotodynamic pumps axial flow, **1.1-1.2**: 1
 - bare rotor terminology, **2.1-2.2**: 41
 - close coupled, **2.1-2.2**: 1
 - construction drawings, **2.1-2.2**: 11, 12 f.–37 f., 55
 - dimensionally interchangeable pumps, **2.1-2.2**: 11
 - duplicate performance pumps, **2.1-2.2**: 11
 - high-speed integral gear-driven, **2.1-2.2**: 2 f., 6
 - hydraulic power recovery turbine, **2.1-2.2**: 7
 - identical pumps, **2.1-2.2**: 41
 - impeller between-bearing type, **2.1-2.2**: 3 f., 6
 - impeller designs, **2.1-2.2**: 8
 - mixed flow, **2.1-2.2**: 1
 - most common types, **2.1-2.2**: 1
 - nomenclature for pump size, **2.1-2.2**: 11
 - overhung pump attributes, **2.1-2.2**: 6 t.
 - overhung pump types and classifications, **2.1-2.2**: 1, 2 f.
 - overhung, flexibly coupled, **2.1-2.2**: 2 f., 5
 - overhung, rigidly coupled, **2.1-2.2**: 2 f., 5
 - overhung, short coupled, **2.1-2.2**: 2 f., 5
 - Pitot tube type, **2.1-2.2**: 7
 - regenerative turbine type, **2.1-2.2**: 4 f., 7
 - rotating assembly terminology, **2.1-2.2**: 41
 - typed by general mechanical configuration, **2.1-2.2**: 1, 2 f., 3 f., 4 f.
 - vertically suspended type, **2.1-2.2**: 4 f.
 - vortex (recessed impeller) type, **2.1-2.2**: 7
- Rotodynamic pumps for assessment of applied nozzle loads, **9.6.2**: 1
 - applicable pump types, **9.6.2**: 1
 - axially split one- and two-stage pumps (BB1), **9.6.2**: 15
 - excluded pump types, **9.6.2**: 1
 - horizontal end suction pumps (ANSI/ASME B73.1 and B73.3), **9.6.2**: 1, 3
 - scope, **9.6.2**: 1
 - vertical in-line pumps (ANSI/ASME B73.2), **9.6.2**: 10
 - vertical turbine short set pumps (VS1 and VS2), **9.6.2**: 18
- Rotodynamic pumps hydraulic performance acceptance tests. *See* Hydraulic performance acceptance tests (rotodynamic pumps) types, **14.6**: 1
- Rotodynamic pumps, **9.1-9.5**: 14
 - general designation, **9.1-9.5**: 14
 - materials, **9.1-9.5**: 14
- Rotodynamic pumps, condition monitoring, **9.6.5**: 1
- Rotodynamic pumps. *See also* NPSH margin
- Rotodynamic submersible pumps, defined, **11.6**: 1
- Rotodynamic vertical pump icons – vertically suspended, **2.1-2.2**: 37
 - axial flow VS3, **2.1-2.2**: 39
 - deep well (line shaft), **2.1-2.2**: 2
 - definition, **2.1-2.2**: 1
 - discharge through column – axial flow – wet pit (VS3), **2.1-2.2**: 39 f.
 - discharge through column – diffuser – wet pit (VS1), **2.1-2.2**: 38 f.
 - discharge through column – volute – wet pit (VS2),

- 2.1-2.2: 39 f.
- discharge through column, 2.1-2.2: 38
- pumping element, 2.1-2.2: 1
- separate discharge – cantilever (VS5), 2.1-2.2: 40 f.
- separate discharge – line shaft – vertical sump (VS4), 2.1-2.2: 40 f.
- separate discharge, 2.1-2.2: 40
- submersible – turbine bowl, 2.1-2.2: 1
- submersible turbine (VS0), 2.1-2.2: 38 f.
- submersible, 2.1-2.2: 38
- types and nomenclature, 2.1-2.2: 1
- vertical volute multistage double casing pump (VS7a), 2.1-2.2: 41 f.
- vertically suspended – double casing – double suction – diffuser (VS6), 2.1-2.2: 41 f.
- vertically suspended – double casing – volute – diffuser (VS7), 2.1-2.2: 41 f.
- vertically suspended – double casing, 2.1-2.2: 41
- vertically suspended – double, 2.1-2.2: 41 f.
- vertically suspended – in-line casing – multistage diffuser (VS8), 2.1-2.2: 42 f.
- vertically suspended in-line casing diffuser, 2.1-2.2: 42
- wet pit, short set (line shaft) – single and double suction, 2.1-2.2: 2
- Rotodynamic vertical pumps design and application, 2.3: 1
- Rotodynamic vertical pumps, 1.3: 1
- Rotor critical speed with shaft of negligible mass and several concentrated masses, 9.6.8: 40f.
- Rotor critical speed with single attached mass, 9.6.8: 39f.
- Rotor first and second critical speeds, 9.6.8: 38f.
- Rotor lateral analysis for VS pumps, 9.6.8: 29
- Rotor lateral natural frequency, defined, 9.6.8: 62
- Rotor torsional natural frequency, defined, 9.6.8: 62
- Rotor, defined, 3.1-3.5: 16, 9.6.8: 62
- Rotordynamic critical speed map, 9.6.8: 48f.
- Rotordynamic damping, defined, 9.6.8: 62
- Rotordynamic instability, defined, 9.6.8: 62
- Rotordynamic stiffness, defined, 9.6.8: 62
- Rows of magnets, defined, 5.1-5.6: 18
- RT1-RT4. See Pump type RT1-Pump type RT4
- RTDs. See Strip resistance temperature detectors
- Rubber. See Natural rubber; Synthetic rubber elastomers
- RUN number, 9.6.8: 11
- Runaway speed, defined, 2.4: 28
- Runout condition, 2.3: 41
- Runout, 9.6.4: 15
- S. See Slip
- Safety characteristics, 4.1-4.6: 21
- Safety consequences, 9.6.9: 4, 4t.
- Safety considerations, 4.1-4.6: 18
 - acute toxicity and skin corrosion, 5.1-5.6: 34
 - acute toxicity categories, 5.1-5.6: 34
 - circulation piping plan selection, 5.1-5.6: 35
 - environmental considerations, 5.1-5.6: 35
 - flammability, 5.1-5.6: 35
 - flammable liquid hazard categories, 5.1-5.6: 35
 - hazards and material properties of pumped fluid, 5.1-5.6: 34
 - requirements for reduction or elimination of fugitive emissions, 5.1-5.6: 35
- Safety relief valves, 7.8: 13
- Safety, 6.1-6.5: 67, 8.1-8.5: 15
- 6.1-6.5: 35
- Saltation, defined, 12.1-12.6: 40
- Samarium cobalt magnet, defined, 5.1-5.6: 17
- Samarium cobalt, defined, 4.1-4.6: 10
- SAR number, defined, 12.1-12.6: 43
- Scalloping, 1.3: 29
- Schematic for open or closed vented tank, 7.6: 9f.
- Screw pumps, 3.1-3.5: 1f.
 - description, 3.1-3.5: 11
 - multiple-screw pumps, 3.1-3.5: 12
 - single screw (progressing cavity), 3.1-3.5: 11
- Screw-type pumps, 1.3: 124, 124f.
- Seal cage. See Lantern ring
- Seal chamber, 2.3: 22, 3.1-3.5: 32f.
 - defined, 3.1-3.5: 18
 - with external seals, 2.3: 22, 22 f.
 - with internal seal arrangement, 2.3: 22, 23 f.
 - with special seal arrangement, 2.3: 22, 24 f.
- Seal faces, temperature monitoring, 9.6.5: 6
- Seal flushing arrangement and associated piping, 9.6.7: 25
- Sealless pump applications, 5.1-5.6: 1
 - defined, 5.1-5.6: 1, 14
 - design, 5.1-5.6: 1
 - primary designs, 5.1-5.6: 1
- Sealless pumps
 - bearing wear monitoring, 9.6.5: 20
 - liquid temperature, 9.6.9: 8
 - pressure buildup indicating leakage in, 9.6.9: 10
 - temperature damage, 9.6.9: 8
 - temperature monitoring for magnetic couplings, 9.6.5: 6
 - temperature monitoring of liquid lubricants, 9.6.5: 7
 - vibration measurement on, 9.6.9: 12
- Sealless rotodynamic pumps additional designs, 5.1-5.6: 54
 - canned motor pump (CMP), 5.1-5.6: 1
 - canned motor pump definitions, 5.1-5.6: 16
 - definitions, 5.1-5.6: 14
 - design and application, 5.1-5.6: 19
 - installation, operation, and maintenance, 5.1-5.6: 39
 - magnetic drive pump (MDP), 5.1-5.6: 2
 - magnetic drive pump definitions, 5.1-5.6: 16
 - part names, 5.1-5.6: 3
 - parts names and definitions, 5.1-5.6: 11t.
 - tests, 5.1-5.6: 48
 - types and nomenclature, 5.1-5.6: 1
 - types, 5.1-5.6: 2f.
- Sealless, defined, 4.1-4.6: 13
- Sealless, magnetically driven rotary pumps advantages, 4.1-4.6: 13

- Sealless, magnetically driven rotary pumps advantages —
Continued
 close-coupled, vane-type, magnetic drive pumps, **4.1-4.6**: 1, 2 f.
 diagrammatic breakdown of rotary pump types. See **ANSI/HI 3.1-3.5**
 general precautions, **4.1-4.6**: 12
 nomenclature, **4.1-4.6**: 6 t.
 operating principles, **4.1-4.6**: 13
 radial synchronous magnetic couplings, **4.1-4.6**: 1
 reasons for use, **4.1-4.6**: 12
 scope of standard, **4.1-4.6**: 1
 See also **ANSI/HI 3.1-3.5**; **ANSI/HI 3.6**
 separately coupled, internal gear, magnetic drive pump
 with secondary control, **4.1-4.6**: 1, 3 f.
 separately coupled, screw-type, magnetic drive pump,
 4.1-4.6: 1, 4f.
 types of magnetic drive configurations, **4.1-4.6**: 1, 2f.,
 3f., 4 f.
- Seals, **12.1-12.6**: 71
 and barrier fluid flow monitoring, **9.6.9**: 10, 10t.
 and catch tank monitoring, **9.6.9**: 10, 10t.
 and gauge mounting, **9.6.9**: 11
 and pressure buildup monitoring, **9.6.9**: 10, 10t.
 application guidelines for leakage monitoring systems,
 9.6.9: 10t.
 centrifugal (dynamic), **12.1-12.6**: 75, 75f.
 dual pressurized arrangements, **9.6.9**: 10, 10t.
 dual unpressurized arrangements, **9.6.9**: 10, 10t.
 leakage indicated by vibration monitoring, **9.6.9**: 12
 leakage, double mechanical seal condition monitoring
 failure mode, **9.6.9**: 18t.
 leakage, single mechanical seal condition monitoring
 failure mode, **9.6.9**: 16t.
 mechanical, **12.1-12.6**: 77–85
 multiple lip, **12.1-12.6**: 76–77, 76f.
 pressure boundary leakage condition monitoring failure
 modes, **9.6.9**: 21t.
 seal face failure mode indicated by temperature
 monitoring, **9.6.9**: 7
 sniffer monitoring of, **9.6.9**: 9, 10t.
 visual monitoring of, **9.6.9**: 9, 10t
- Secondary containment system, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 11, **5.1-5.6**:
 19, **7.8**: 8
- Secondary containment test acceptance criteria, **5.1-5.6**:
 51
 objective, **5.1-5.6**: 50
 test parameters, **5.1-5.6**: 50
 test procedure, **5.1-5.6**: 50
- Secondary containment, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 11, **5.1-5.6**: 19
- Secondary control system, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 11, **5.1-5.6**:
 19
- Secondary control, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 11, **5.1-5.6**: 19
- Secondary seals, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 38
- Sediments, **9.8**: 108
 configuration for, **9.8**: 102f.
 control and removal, **9.8**: 109
 entrance conditions, **9.8**: 100–101
 handling and accumulation of, **9.8**: 107
 pump bay details near the pumps, **9.8**: 101, 103f.
 pump bay dividing walls, **9.8**: 101
 Shallow liquid source, rectangular intakes for, **9.8**: 100
 vertical transition, **9.8**: 101
- Segmented (segmental) ring design. See Pump type BB4
- Selection guideline, **4.1-4.6**: 20
 data sheet, **4.1-4.6**: 22
 pump and drive characteristics, **4.1-4.6**: 21
 pump and system ratings, **4.1-4.6**: 20
 pumped liquid characteristics, **4.1-4.6**: 20
 safety characteristics, **4.1-4.6**: 21
 specifications, **4.1-4.6**: 20
 supplemental data sheet, **4.1-4.6**: 21
- Self-priming pumps, **1.3**: 119, 120f., 121f., 123
- Self-release couplings, **2.3**: 29
- Semi-open impellers, **2.3**: 6 f., 6
 and axial thrust, **2.3**: 9 f., 9
- Sensors
 fluid level, **9.6.9**: 10
 temperature, **9.6.9**: 7
 vibration, **9.6.9**: 12
- Separately coupled, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 12, **5.1-5.6**: 18
- Separately coupled, internal gear, magnetic drive pump
 with secondary control, **4.1-4.6**: 1, 3f.
- Separately coupled, screw-type, magnetic drive pump,
 4.1-4.6: 1, 4f.
- Separation margin, defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- Series operation, **2.3**: 39, 39 f.
- Servicing space, **8.1-8.5**: 16
- Set pressure. See Cracking pressure
- Settling slurries, **6.1-6.5**: 35, **12.1-12.6**: 48–50
 defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41, 45
- Settling velocity, **6.1-6.5**: 35
 defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41
- Severity levels, **9.6.9**: 4, 4t., 5t.
- Shaft deflection
 calculating dry critical speed for between-bearings
 (type BB) impellers, **1.3**: 41
 calculating dry critical speed for overhung (type OH)
 impellers, **1.3**: 37
 calculating for between-bearings (type BB) single-
 stage pumps, **1.3**: 39f., 39
 calculating for overhung (type OH) impellers, **1.3**: 36,
 36f.
 defined, **1.3**: 35
 overhung (type OH) impeller pumps (API standard),
 1.3: 35
 overhung (type OH) impeller pumps (ASME standard),
 1.3: 35
 overhung (type OH) impeller pumps (ISO standard),
 1.3: 35
- Shaft lateral analysis, defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- Shaft position monitoring, **9.6.5**: 18
 alarm limits, **9.6.5**: 18
 by dial indicator, **9.6.5**: 19

- Shaft position monitoring — *Continued*
 - by proximity probes, **9.6.5**: 19
 - means of, **9.6.5**: 19
- Shaft rotation, **1.1-1.2**: 44 f., 44, 45 f.
- Shaft seals, **1.3**: 60, **2.3**: 20, **5.1-5.6**: 20
 - alternative methods, **2.3**: 26
 - alternatives to mechanical seals, **1.3**: 64
 - back-to-back seals, **1.3**: 61
 - balance ratio, **1.3**: 62
 - balanced seals, **1.3**: 62
 - bearing house closures, **2.3**: 26
 - bearing housing sealing, **1.3**: 64, 65f.
 - bearing isolators, **1.3**: 66, 67f. , **2.3**: 26
 - contact seals, **1.3**: 65
 - contacting wet seals, **1.3**: 62
 - containment seals, **1.3**: 63
 - double seals, **1.3**: 63
 - dual pressurized seals, **1.3**: 63
 - dual unpressurized seals, **1.3**: 63
 - dynamic seals, **1.3**: 63
 - face seals, **1.3**: 65
 - face-to-back seals, **1.3**: 63
 - face-to-face seals, **1.3**: 63
 - flexible rotors, **1.3**: 63
 - flexible stators, **1.3**: 63
 - labyrinth seals, **1.3**: 66
 - lip seals, **1.3**: 65, 66f.
 - lubricant return, **1.3**: 62
 - mating rings, **1.3**: 63
 - mechanical seal applications, **1.3**: 61
 - mechanical seal classification by arrangement, **1.3**: 62f.
 - mechanical seal classification by design, **1.3**: 62f.
 - mechanical seal nomenclature, **1.3**: 61
 - mechanical seal, **1.3**: 63
 - mechanical seals (classified by arrangement), **2.3**: 21 f.
 - mechanical seals (classified by design), **2.3**: 21 f.
 - mechanical seals, **1.3**: 61, **2.3**: 20
 - noncontact seals, **1.3**: 65
 - nonpusher seals, **1.3**: 63
 - packed stuffing box for low to intermediate pressure service, **2.3**: 24, 25 f.
 - packed stuffing box with lantern ring, **1.3**: 60, 60f.
 - packed stuffing box with water injection, **2.3**: 24, 25 f.
 - packed stuffing box without lantern ring, **1.3**: 60, 60f.
 - packed stuffing boxes, **1.3**: 60, **2.3**: 24
 - pusher seals, **1.3**: 63
 - quench glands, **1.3**: 63
 - seal chambers with external seals, **2.3**: 22, 22 f.
 - seal chambers with internal seal arrangement, **2.3**: 22, 23 f.
 - seal chambers with special seal arrangement, **2.3**: 22, 24 f.
 - seal chambers, **1.3**: 64, **2.3**: 22
 - sealless pumps, **1.3**: 64
 - secondary seals, **1.3**: 63
 - simple gap seals, **1.3**: 66
 - single seals, **1.3**: 63
 - tandem seals, **1.3**: 63
 - throat bushing, **1.3**: 63
 - unbalanced seals, **1.3**: 64
- Shaft sleeves, **12.1-12.6**: 75
- Shaft support, **1.3**: 34
- Shafting, **2.3**: 14
 - combined shear stress, **2.3**: 14
 - pump-to-driver, **2.3**: 28, 28 f., 29 f.
 - See also* Enclosed line-shaft pumps; Open line-shaft pumps
- Shafts, **2.3**: 65, 74
 - breakage condition monitoring failure modes, **9.6.9**: 20t.
 - breakage indicated by power monitoring, **9.6.9**: 5
 - breakage indicated by vibration monitoring, **9.6.9**: 12
 - displacement control limits, **9.6.5**: 16
 - leakage guidelines, **9.6.9**: 11
 - maintenance inspection for bending fatigue, **9.6.5**: 25, 26
 - maintenance inspection for breakage, **9.6.5**: 25, 26
 - maintenance inspection for torsional fatigue, **9.6.5**: 25, 26
 - maintenance inspection for torsional overload, **9.6.5**: 26
 - power guidelines, **9.6.9**: 6
 - pressure guidelines, **9.6.9**: 12
 - rate-of-flow guidelines, **9.6.9**: 13
 - Shut-down limits defined, **9.6.9**: 5
 - Sleeve bearings failure, **9.6.9**: 5
 - speed (rpm) guidelines, **9.6.9**: 14
 - temperature guidelines, **9.6.9**: 9
 - temperature monitoring of, **9.6.9**: 7
 - vibration guidelines, **9.6.9**: 13
 - vibration monitoring, **9.6.5**: 15
- Shear rate, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 37
- Shear sensitivity, **3.1-3.5**: 2, **4.1-4.6**: 17
- Shear stress, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 37
- Shell, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 12
- Shipment inspection, **3.1-3.5**: 54
- Shoe-box-type formed suction intake, **9.8**: 97, 99f.
- Shutdown analysis, **2.3**: 32
- Shutdown limit, **9.6.5**: 4
- Shutdown, **1.3**: 82
- Shutoff (SO), defined, **1.1-1.2**: 71, **2.1-2.2**: 34
- Shut-off flow, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 36
- Shut-off head, defined, **11.6**: 7
- Side valve pot type liquid end, **8.1-8.5**: 4, 4f.
- Silicon carbide bearings, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- Similar, defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- Simple horizontal centrifugal pump system, **9.6.8**: 41f.
- Simplex pump, **6.1-6.5**: 1f., 2f., 3
- Single seals, **12.1-12.6**: 77–80
 - application limits of, **12.1-12.6**: 77–79, 77t.
 - defined, **12.1-12.6**: 38
- Single-acting pump, **6.1-6.5**: 1, 2f.

- Single-level rotordynamic model, defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- Single-plane balancing (formerly called *static balancing*), defined, **1.1-1.2**: 73
- Single-plane balancing, defined, **2.1-2.2**: 37
- Single-screw pump (progressing cavity), **3.1-3.5**: 14f.
range chart, **3.1-3.5**: 11f.
- Single-spring elastomeric bellows seals, **12.1-12.6**: 80, 81f.
- Sliding abrasion, **12.1-12.6**: 58–60, 59f.
- Sliding vane pumps (rigid), **3.1-3.5**: 1f., 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f., 7, 14f.
design, **3.1-3.5**: 7
range chart, **3.1-3.5**: 7f.
variable capacity designs, **3.1-3.5**: 7
- Slip (*S*), **6.1-6.5**: 27, **6.6**: 5, **8.1-8.5**: 10
defined, **3.1-3.5**: 19, **5.1-5.6**: 18
definition and equation, **3.6**: 2
hydraulic, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 12
magnetic, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 12
- Slurries
characteristics of, **12.1-12.6**: 45, 47f.
defined, **12.1-12.6**: 2, 38
effect on performance, **12.1-12.6**: 50–51, 51f.
effect on performance, **7.8**: 11
effects in piping systems, **12.1-12.6**: 64, 65f.
effects of, **12.1-12.6**: 1
erosive mechanisms, **12.1-12.6**: 58
heterogeneous, **12.1-12.6**: 45
homogeneous, **12.1-12.6**: 45
nonsettling, **12.1-12.6**: 40, 45
particle impact, **12.1-12.6**: 58, 59, 60, 60f.
relationship of concentration to specific gravity, **12.1-12.6**: 45, 47f.
service classes, **12.1-12.6**: 61–62, 62f., 63t.
settling, **12.1-12.6**: 48–50
settling, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41, 45
sliding abrasion, **12.1-12.6**: 58–60, 59f.
terminology and definitions, **12.1-12.6**: 38–44
types (schematic classification for industrial pipeline applications), **12.1-12.6**: 45, 48f.
- Slurry abrasivity, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 43
- Slurry applications
apparent viscosity of slurry versus shear rate, **3.1-3.5**: 45
carrier liquid, **3.1-3.5**: 44
clearance provision for particle size, **3.1-3.5**: 47
concentration of solids (by weight), **3.1-3.5**: 44
corrosion effect on wear, **3.1-3.5**: 47
differential pressure versus pump input power, **3.1-3.5**: 46f.
flow velocity of slurries, **3.1-3.5**: 46
hardness of solids, **3.1-3.5**: 45
materials of construction, **3.1-3.5**: 48
operating sequences with slurries, **3.1-3.5**: 47
performance changes with slurries, **3.1-3.5**: 46
pressure relief provision, **3.1-3.5**: 47
pump design, **3.1-3.5**: 48
sealing against slurries, **3.1-3.5**: 48
settling characteristics, **3.1-3.5**: 45
size of solids, **3.1-3.5**: 44
slurry characteristics, **3.1-3.5**: 44
slurry effect on friction power, **3.1-3.5**: 47
slurry effect on slip, **3.1-3.5**: 47
speed effect on wear, **3.1-3.5**: 48
speed effects with slurries, **3.1-3.5**: 46
testing and modeling, **3.1-3.5**: 47
typical slurry system conversion curve, **3.1-3.5**: 46f.
wear consideration, **3.1-3.5**: 47
wear type, **3.1-3.5**: 47
- Slurry efficiency (η_m), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 42
- Slurry head (H_m), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41
- Slurry power (P_m), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 42
- Slurry pump types, allowable bearing housing vibration, **9.6.4**: 9 f.
- Slurry pumps, **9.6.1**: 12–13, **12.1-12.6**: 1
cantilevered wet pit pumps, **12.1-12.6**: 1
close-coupled submersible pumps, **12.1-12.6**: 1
defined, **12.1-12.6**: 1, 2
effect of slurries on performance, **12.1-12.6**: 50–51, 51f.
elastomer pumps, **12.1-12.6**: 1
end suction, **20.3**: 5 t.
hard metal pumps, **12.1-12.6**: 1
material types and discharge pressure for particle size, **12.1-12.6**: 2, 3f.
recommendations, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 1
requirements, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 1
separately coupled, frame-mounted mechanical configurations, **12.1-12.6**: 1
types, **12.1-12.6**: 1, 2f., 5f.–20f.
- Slurry service classes, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 43
- Slurry, **6.1-6.5**: 34
- Small motor mounting plate structure, **9.6.8**: 81f.
- Sniffer inspection, of leakage, **9.6.9**: 9, 10t.
- Sniffers, **9.6.5**: 11
- Soft-start drivers, **6.1-6.5**: 46
- Solids (in water), **2.3**: 79
- Solids mixture d85 size, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 40
- Solids transport rate, **12.1-12.6**: 45, 46f.
- Solids-bearing liquids
additional criteria for, **9.8**: 9
circular plan wet pit for, **9.8**: 36–37, 37f.–39f.
cleaning procedures, **9.8**: 34
design principles, **9.8**: 32–33
horizontal surfaces near inlet, **9.8**: 34
intake structures for, **9.8**: 1, 32
rectangular wet wells for, **9.8**: 40–41, 41f.
trench-type wet wells for, **9.8**: 34–36
vertical transitions, **9.8**: 33, 33f.
- Solid-shaft driver, **2.1-2.2**: 11, **2.3**: 28 f., 28
- Solids-handling pump types, allowable bearing housing vibration, **9.6.4**: 9 f.
- Solids-handling, end suction pump, **20.3**: 5 t.
- Sommerfeld number, defined, **9.6.8**: 62

- Sound levels and sources, **2.3**: 51
- Spare parts, **12.1-12.6**: 95
- Special effect type pump icons, **1.1-1.2**: 81
- Special test methods, **14.6**: 66
- Specific energy (E_j)
 - and particle size, **12.1-12.6**: 59
 - of impact wear, **12.1-12.6**: 59
- Specific energy (E_{sp})
 - and particle size, **12.1-12.6**: 58–59
 - defined, **12.1-12.6**: 44
 - of sliding energy, **12.1-12.6**: 58–59
- Specific gravity
 - correction factor (C_{sg}), **12.1-12.6**: 53
 - defined, **12.1-12.6**: 42
 - measurement of, **12.1-12.6**: 98
 - of slurry (S_m), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41
 - of solids (S_s), defined, **12.1-12.6**: 41
 - of various materials, **12.1-12.6**: 107–108
 - relationship to concentration, **12.1-12.6**: 45, 47f.
- Specific gravity (s), **4.1-4.6**: 16
 - and performance tests, **3.6**: 11
 - defined, **3.6**: 8
- Specific heat, **4.1-4.6**: 16
- Specific speed (n_s), **1.1-1.2**: 8, **1.3**: 4, 5t., 6, **2.1-2.2**: 16, **2.3**: 1
 - and two-phase pumping, **1.3**: 125
 - defined, **2.1-2.2**: 8
 - definition and formula, **2.3**: 3
 - for vertical turbine diffuser-type pump, **20.3**: 3
 - for volute-type pump, **20.3**: 3
 - US and metric units for, **2.1-2.2**: 8
- Specific weight (γ), defined, **3.6**: 7
- Specific weight of water, defined, **6.6**: 2
- Specified condition point, defined, **1.1-1.2**: 70, **2.1-2.2**: 34, **12.1-12.6**: 35
- Spectrographic analysis
 - in lubricant analysis, **9.6.5**: 16
 - of metal particles from wear, **9.6.5**: 16
- Speed (n), **6.1-6.5**: 24, **8.1-8.5**: 9
 - correction to specified speed (calculations), **3.6**: 14, 15 f.
 - defined, **1.1-1.2**: 68, **2.1-2.2**: 31, **3.1-3.5**: 19, **3.6**: 2, **11.6**: 7, **12.1-12.6**: 33
 - defined
- Speed (rpm) monitoring, **9.6.5**: 20, **9.6.9**: 14
 - alarm limits, **9.6.5**: 20
 - by electronic counter, **9.6.5**: 20
 - by revolution counter, **9.6.5**: 20
 - by strobe light, **9.6.5**: 20
 - by tachometer, **9.6.5**: 20
 - condition indicators, **9.6.9**: 26t.
 - constant-speed systems, **9.6.5**: 20
 - control limits, **9.6.9**: 14
 - frequency, **9.6.9**: 5t., 14
 - measurement methods, **9.6.5**: 20, **9.6.9**: 14
 - variable-speed systems, **9.6.5**: 20
- Speed measurement electronic units, **6.6**: 22
 - frequency response devices, **6.6**: 22
 - instrument accuracy, **6.6**: 22
 - maximum permissible short-term speed fluctuation, **6.6**: 22
 - revolution counter and timer method, **6.6**: 22
 - stroboscopes, **6.6**: 22
 - tachometers, **6.6**: 22
- Speed versus torque curve example, **9.6.7**: 26f.
- Speed vs. torque curves, **2.3**: 33, 35 f., 36 f.
 - for NEMA AC motors, **2.3**: 88 f.
 - for NEMA Design A-D motors, **2.3**: 89 f.
- Speeds
 - and application details, **6.1-6.5**: 41
 - and liquid characteristics, **6.1-6.5**: 41
 - and pump design, **6.1-6.5**: 41
 - and type of duty, **6.1-6.5**: 42
 - basic speed ratings and formulas, **6.1-6.5**: 36–41
 - factors affecting operating speed, **6.1-6.5**: 41
 - high, **6.1-6.5**: 43
 - medium, **6.1-6.5**: 42
 - slow, **6.1-6.5**: 42
- Speeds above 600 rpm, **9.6.4**: 2, 3
 - allowable bearing housing vibration, **9.6.4**: 7, 8 f., 9 f.
- Speeds of 600 rpm and below, **9.6.4**: 3
 - allowable bearing housing vibration, **9.6.4**: 10 t.
- Spiders
 - losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
- Stability analysis, defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- Stability, **9.6.9**: 28
 - defined, **9.6.5**: 56
- Staff interviews, **40.7**: 5
- Stainless steels, **12.1-12.6**: 67
- Standard conditions of pressure and temperature, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 23
- Standard dimensions, deviations from, **9.8**: 68–69
- Standard tests, **11.6**: 1
 - conditions, **11.6**: 6
 - types, **11.6**: 4
- Standards-setting organizations, **11.6**: 69
- Starting torque, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 16
- Starting, **6.1-6.5**: 43
 - pump torque characteristics, **6.1-6.5**: 43
 - pump torque requirements, **6.1-6.5**: 44
 - soft-start drivers, **6.1-6.5**: 46
 - with liquid bypass, **6.1-6.5**: 44, 45f.
 - without liquid bypass, **6.1-6.5**: 44
- Start-to-discharge pressure. See Cracking pressure
- Start-up analysis, **2.3**: 32
- Start-up timers, **9.6.9**: 7
- Startup, **1.3**: 81, **12.1-12.6**: 92
 - with closed discharge valve, **1.3**: 82
 - with open discharge valve, **1.3**: 82
- Static deflection of motor center of gravity, **9.6.8**: 76f.
- Static pressure tap, requirements, **40.6**: 16 f.
 - thick wall, **40.6**: 16 f.
 - thin wall, **40.6**: 16 f.
- Static pressure, **1.3**: 1

- Static suction lift (I_s), **6.1-6.5**: 31, **8.1-8.5**: 12
 defined, **1.1-1.2**: 71, **2.1-2.2**: 35
- Stationary bed, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 42
- Stator liner, **5.1-5.6**: 19
- Stator, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
- Steam turbines, **1.3**: 175
- Stiffness coefficients, defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- Stilt-mounted metal baseplate, **9.6.2**: 9f.
- Stock pump, flexibly coupled, single stage, foot mounted pump, **1.1-1.2**: 14 f.
- Stock, end suction pump, **20.3**: 5 t.
- Storage, **3.1-3.5**: 54, **8.1-8.5**: 16
- Stork-type formed suction intake, **9.8**: 97, 98f.
- Strain gauges, **9.6.5**: 5, **9.6.9**: 6
- Strainers, **2.3**: 65, **3.1-3.5**: 62
 defined, **5.1-5.6**: 15
- String tests, **14.6**: 54
 influencing factors for calculating pump efficiency for different configurations, **14.6**: 54, 55 t.
 wire-to-water efficiency, **14.6**: 55
- Strip resistance temperature detectors (RTDs), **9.6.5**: 6
- Stripping applications, **4.1-4.6**: 17
- Strobe lights, **9.6.9**: 14
- Strobe lights, in speed (rpm) monitoring, **9.6.5**: 20
- Stroboscopes (in rotary speed measurement), **3.6**: 25
- Stroke (L), **6.1-6.5**: 24, **8.1-8.5**: 7
 defined, **6.6**: 2, **7.6**: 4
- Strong vortex cores, **9.8**: 49
- Structural analyses general, **9.6.8**: 50, 56
- Structural analysis (stationary), **9.6.8**: 29
- Structural natural frequency is close to the maximum range of operation rpm, **9.6.8**: 74f.
- Structural natural frequency is close to the minimum range of operating rpm, **9.6.8**: 75f.
- Stuffing box, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- Stuffing boxes, **3.1-3.5**: 32f.
- Submerged suction, **6.1-6.5**: 31, **8.1-8.5**: 11
 defined, **1.1-1.2**: 71, **2.1-2.2**: 35, **12.1-12.6**: 35
- Submergence for minimizing surface vortices, **9.8**: 44–46, 47f.
- Submergence, **2.3**: 42
- Submersible motor efficiency (h_{mot}), definition and calculation, **11.6**: 46
- Submersible motor input power (P_{gr}), defined, **11.6**: 10
- Submersible motor integrity tests, **11.6**: 4, 29
 electrical continuity and resistance test, **11.6**: 30
 electrical high-potential (hi-pot) test, **11.6**: 32
 electrical megohmmeter resistance test, **11.6**: 31
 housing pressure test setup, **11.6**: 29, 30f.
 housing vacuum test setup, **11.6**: 30, 31f.
 miscellaneous electronic sensors, **11.6**: 31
 motor moisture sensor, **11.6**: 31
 motor winding resistance measurement, **11.6**: 30
 objective, **11.6**: 29
 setups and procedures, **11.6**: 29
 thermal switches, **11.6**: 30
- Submersible pump, definition, **40.6**: 9
- Submersible pumps, **9.8**: 95, 95f.
- Submersible sewage, end suction pump, **20.3**: 5 t.
- Submersible, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 3
- Subsurface vortices, **9.8**: 49, 52–53, 52f., 66, 67f.
- Subsynchronous vibration, defined, **9.6.8**: 62
- Suction
 - flooded, defined, **7.8**: 4
 - lift, static, defined, **7.8**: 4
 - lift, total, defined, **7.8**: 4
- Suction bell design, **9.8**: 93, 94f.
- Suction bell length, **9.8**: 93
- Suction bell vanes, **9.8**: 82, 83f.
- Suction bells
 - losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
- Suction cans (barrels), **2.3**: 42, 43 f.
- Suction conditions, **2.1-2.2**: 35, **6.1-6.5**: 31, **8.1-8.5**: 11
 definitions, **1.1-1.2**: 71, **12.1-12.6**: 35–36
- Suction performance, **1.3**: 78
- Suction pipe or hose, **7.6**: 9
- Suction piping, and avoiding accumulation of vapor, **2.3**: 42
- Suction port, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 16
- Suction pressure gauge, **7.6**: 9
- Suction pressure, **8.1-8.5**: 10, **9.6.9**: 11
 See Inlet pressure
- Suction recirculation, **1.3**: 72
- Suction specific speed (S), **1.1-1.2**: 8, **1.3**: 4, 5t., 6, **2.1-2.2**: 16, **2.3**: 1, **9.6.1**: 4–5, 7, 17
 and rotative speed limitations, **2.3**: 57, 59 f., 60 f.
 defined, **2.1-2.2**: 9, 18
 definition and formula, **2.3**: 5
 for pump types, **2.1-2.2**: 1
 Symbols, **2.1-2.2**: 65, 65 t.
 US and metric units for, **2.1-2.2**: 8
- Suction system relationships, **6.1-6.5**: 51f., 52f., 54
- Suction umbrellas, **9.8**: 65
- Sump diameter D_s , **9.8**: 20
- Sump pumps, **1.3**: 3f., 137, **2.3**: 62, 63 f., 72 f.
 temperature concerns, **1.3**: 144, 150
 temperature range of pump assembly, **1.3**: 144
 adapter, **1.3**: 138
 alarms and controls, **1.3**: 145, 146f., 152
 applications, **1.3**: 141, 149
 bearing bushing in adaptor, **1.3**: 138
 bearing bushing, intermediate, **1.3**: 138
 bearing housing, **1.3**: 140, 147
 bearing, outboard (antifriction), **1.3**: 147
 bearing, outboard, **1.3**: 138
 bearing, retainer, **1.3**: 140
 casing, **1.3**: 140, 147
 column, **1.3**: 140, 147
 coupling, **1.3**: 140
 discharge pipe, **1.3**: 140, 147
 driver pedestal, **1.3**: 141, 149
 driver, **1.3**: 140, 149
 friction loss, **1.3**: 141, 150
 impeller, **1.3**: 140, 149

Sump pumps — *Continued*

- lube piping, **1.3**: 140
- lubrication cleanliness, **1.3**: 145
- materials, **1.3**: 144, 150
- minimum submergence, **1.3**: 142, 150
- mounting plate, **1.3**: 140, 149
- nozzle loads, **1.3**: 146, 146f., 152, 152f.
- performance, **1.3**: 141, 149
- pit cover, **1.3**: 141, 149
- pressurized and vapor-tight construction, **1.3**: 144, 145f.
- rate of flow vs. minimum submergence, **1.3**: 143f., 151f.
- shaft, **1.3**: 141, 149
- single casing volute cantilever (type VS5), **2.3**: 70, 72 f.
- single casing volute line shaft (type VS4), **2.3**: 62, 63 f.
- static head, **1.3**: 141, 149
- strainer, **1.3**: 141
- tailpipe and float control, **1.3**: 142f.
- tailpipe, **1.3**: 142, 150
- terminology, **1.3**: 138, 147
- thermal range of assembly, **1.3**: 150
- type VS4 (line-shaft) design, **1.3**: 138, 139f.
- type VS5 (cantilever shaft design), **1.3**: 146, 148f.
- Sump volume, **9.8**: 9
 - active, **9.8**: 72
 - assumptions, **9.8**: 74
 - graph construction, **9.8**: 73
 - inflow rate, **9.8**: 73
 - programmable controllers, **9.8**: 75, 75f.
 - simple controller, **9.8**: 73–75, 73f.
- Sun protection of pumping systems, **7.8**: 8
- Super-duplex stainless steels, **12.1-12.6**: 67
- Supplementary data, **50.7**: 13, 14
 - See also* R/D/S field designations
 - Supported work processes and equipment types, **50.7**: 11, 11t.
- Supply tank, **7.6**: 8
- Surface roughness factors that determine surface finish, **20.3**: 1
- Surface vortices, **9.8**: 65, 81
 - application considerations, **9.8**: 46, 47f.
 - approach-flow skewness, **9.8**: 44–45
 - controlling parameters, **9.8**: 45–46
 - submergence for minimizing, **9.8**: 44
- Surface water intakes, issues with, **9.8**: 107
- Swirl
 - in pump intake, **9.8**: 9
 - in suction pipe, **9.8**: 52–53
- Swirl meter, **9.8**: 52, 53f.
- Synchronous drive, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 12
- Synchronous magnet coupling, **4.1-4.6**: 13
- Synchronous motor, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Synchronous vibration, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Synthetic rubber elastomers, **12.1-12.6**: 68
- System blockage, **9.6.9**: 5
- System complexity and unit size, **9.6.8**: 11
- System design, **12.1-12.6**: 64–65
 - head and velocity requirements for nonsettling slurries, **12.1-12.6**: 64, 65f.
 - head and velocity requirements for settling slurries, **12.1-12.6**: 64, 65f.
 - typical constant concentration slurry pipeline friction loss characteristics, **12.1-12.6**: 64, 65f.
- System piping, **2.3**: 26
- System pressure limitation, **1.3**: 71, **2.3**: 31
- System ratings, **4.1-4.6**: 20
- System RCF vs. motor RCF and motor center of gravity deflection component, **9.6.8**: 72f.
- Tachometers (in rotary speed measurement), **3.6**: 25
- Tachometers, **9.6.5**: 20, **9.6.9**: 14
- Tail rod, defined, **6.6**: 5
- Tailpipes and float control, **2.3**: 66, 68 f., 76
- Tanks, pump suction
 - air or gas entrainment, **9.8**: 23
 - antivortex devices, **9.8**: 70f.
 - design features, **9.8**: 22–23
 - geometry, **9.8**: 22
 - horizontal, **9.8**: 69–70, 70f., 71f.
 - inflow and outflow configurations, **9.8**: 71f.
 - multiple inlets or outlets, **9.8**: 25
 - NPSH considerations, **9.8**: 25
 - simultaneous inflow and outflow, **9.8**: 25
 - submergence, **9.8**: 23, 24f.
 - V and D for submergence calculation, **9.8**: 24, 25f.
 - vertical, **9.8**: 69, 70f., 71f.
- Technical requirements for approval, **40.7**: 9
 - data analysis and report generation, **40.7**: 11
 - general, **40.7**: 9
 - maintenance, **40.7**: 10
 - measurements and reporting of data, **40.7**: 10
 - personnel competencies, **40.7**: 9
 - personnel training, **40.7**: 9
 - personnel, **40.7**: 9
 - pump test equipment, **40.7**: 10
 - pump test result uncertainty, **40.7**: 11
 - records maintenance, **40.7**: 11
- Temperature buildup, **1.3**: 72
- Temperature classification Tx, **2.4**: 9
- Temperature considerations, **3.1-3.5**: 33
- Temperature limits, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 16
- Temperature measurement, **3.6**: 25, **6.6**: 23
- Temperature monitoring, **9.6.5**: 6, **9.6.9**: 7
 - alarm limits, **9.6.5**: 8
 - and pumped liquid temperature rise, **9.6.5**: 7
 - applications, **9.6.9**: 7
 - by strip resistance temperature detectors (RTDs), **9.6.5**: 6
 - by thermocouple probes, **9.6.5**: 6
 - condition indicators, **9.6.9**: 24t.
 - control limits, **9.6.9**: 9
 - for liquid film bearings, **9.6.5**: 7

- Temperature monitoring — *Continued*
 - for magnetic couplings in sealless pumps, **9.6.5**: 7
 - for motor winding, **9.6.5**: 6
 - for rolling element bearings, **9.6.5**: 7
 - for seal faces, **9.6.5**: 7
 - for sealless pump liquids, **9.6.5**: 7
 - for temperature-sensitive liquids, **9.6.5**: 6
 - frequency, **9.6.9**: 5t., 9
 - in sealless pumps, **9.6.9**: 8
 - means of monitoring, **9.6.9**: 7
 - means of, **9.6.5**: 6
 - of temperature-sensitive liquids, **9.6.9**: 7
 - pumped liquid temperature rise, **9.6.9**: 8
 - shutdown limits, **9.6.5**: 8
- Temperature of test fluid, **40.6**: 26
 - bimetal or dial-type thermometers, **40.6**: 26
 - bulb-type thermometers, **40.6**: 26
 - resistance temperature detectors (RTDs), **40.6**: 26
 - thermocouples, **40.6**: 26
- Temperature probes, in bearing wear monitoring, **9.6.5**: 21
- Temperature rise in drive section, defined, **5.1-5.6**: 16
- Temperature sensors, **9.6.9**: 7
- Temperature, **4.1-4.6**: 15
 - internal rise, **4.1-4.6**: 24
- Temperature-sensitive liquids, **9.6.9**: 7
- Termination by HI, **40.7**: 6
 - of application, **40.7**: 6
 - of Participant, **40.7**: 7
- Terminology definitions, **11.6**: 6
 - subscripts, **11.6**: 4, 4t.
 - symbols and units, **11.6**: 2
 - symbols, **11.6**: 3t.
- Terminology, **3.6**: 1, 3 t., **4.1-4.6**: 7, **6.6**: 1, **12.1-12.6**: 31–44, **14.6**: 2, 2 t.
 - hermetic integrity (optional), **4.1-4.6**: 27
 - See also Nomenclature Tests, **4.1-4.6**: 26
 - torque confirmation (optional), **4.1-4.6**: 28
- Terms and definitions, **40.6**: 1
- Terms, **1.3**: 4, 5t.
- Terms, pump application, **1.1-1.2**: 65 t.
- Test arrangements, **40.6**: 13
 - correct flow-measuring conditions, **40.6**: 13
 - downstream measuring section, **40.6**: 13
 - general, **40.6**: 13
 - measurement principles to determine pump total head, **40.6**: 13
- Test pressure, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 37
- Test procedures, **40.6**: 10
 - arrangements, **40.6**: 10
 - conditions, **40.6**: 10
 - equipment, **40.6**: 10
 - general, **40.6**: 10
 - procedure, **40.6**: 10
 - speed of rotation, **40.6**: 11
 - test report, **40.6**: 10
- Test report form, **9.6.4**: 11, 12
- Test setup, **7.6**: 8, 9f.
- Test tolerances, reasons for, **14.6**: 42
 - and selection of pump test acceptance grades and corresponding tolerance bands, **14.6**: 43
 - casting cleaning, **14.6**: 43
 - casting dimensions, **14.6**: 42
 - casting surface finish, **14.6**: 42
 - effect of accessories on mechanical losses (power), **14.6**: 43
 - machining dimensions, **14.6**: 43
 - machining finishes, **14.6**: 43
 - manufacturing variations, **14.6**: 42
- Testing
 - by manufacturer, **12.1-12.6**: 97
 - field tests, **12.1-12.6**: 97
 - flowmeters in, **12.1-12.6**: 98
 - head measurement, **12.1-12.6**: 98
 - hydrostatic tests, **12.1-12.6**: 96
 - instrumentation, **12.1-12.6**: 98
 - objective, **12.1-12.6**: 96–97
 - optional slurry test, **12.1-12.6**: 96
 - performance tests, **12.1-12.6**: 96
 - power measurement, **12.1-12.6**: 98
 - specific gravity measurement, **12.1-12.6**: 98
 - test conditions, **12.1-12.6**: 97
 - wear tests, **12.1-12.6**: 97–98
- Testing methodologies and standards, **40.7**: 2
- Tests
 - and scope of standard, **5.1-5.6**: 48
 - hermetic integrity, **5.1-5.6**: 49
 - motor winding integrity, **5.1-5.6**: 50
 - motor winding temperature rise, **5.1-5.6**: 51
 - report, **5.1-5.6**: 53
 - secondary containment, **5.1-5.6**: 50
 - See Factory performance tests; Hydrostatic pressure testing; Mechanical test; Model tests for pump acceptance
 - See NPSH tests; Optional tests; Performance tests; Pump acceptance tests; String tests; Thermodynamic test method
 - types, **5.1-5.6**: 48
- The Association For Manufacturing Technology, **5.1-5.6**: 47
- Theoretical loss analysis explanations, **9.6.7**: 18
 - power balance and losses, **9.6.7**: 18
- Thermal effects, **9.6.7**: 20
- Thermocouple probes, **9.6.5**: 6, **9.6.9**: 7
- Thermodynamic test method, **14.6**: 66
- Thermometer or temperature sensor, **7.6**: 9
- Thermoplastics types, **9.1-9.5**: 25
- Thermosetting polymers chemistries, **9.1-9.5**: 25
 - manufacturing processes, **9.1-9.5**: 25
- Thixotropic fluid, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 40, 40f.
- Threaded suction cases losses due to viscosity, **2.3**: 50
- Throat area, **1.3**: 1
- Thrust bearings, **2.3**: 27, **9.6.9**: 7

- Time periods for calibration of test instruments, **40.6**: 27
 instrument recalibration maximum intervals, **40.6**: 27 t.
 recalibration interval, **40.6**: 27
- Timed screw pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f.
 on baseplate, **3.1-3.5**: 28f.
 range chart, **3.1-3.5**: 12f.
 two-screw, **3.1-3.5**: 14f.
- Time-independent non-Newtonian fluids, defined, **3.1-3.5**:
 40
- Timers, **9.6.9**: 7
- Timing gear, defined, **3.1-3.5**: 17
- Tolerance, **9.6.9**: 28
- Tolerance, defined, **9.6.5**: 56
- Torque
 closed valve condition, **2.3**: 34, 35 f.
 defined, **5.1-5.6**: 16
 open valve condition, **2.3**: 34
 See also Speed vs. torque curves
 starting (locked rotor, breakaway), **2.3**: 88
- Torque and torque curve, **1.3**: 85, 85f.
- Torque confirmation test acceptance criteria, **4.1-4.6**: 29
 calculations, **4.1-4.6**: 28
 decoupling torque, **4.1-4.6**: 29
 object, **4.1-4.6**: 28
 parameters, **4.1-4.6**: 28
 procedure, **4.1-4.6**: 29
 records, **4.1-4.6**: 28
 scope, **4.1-4.6**: 28
- Torque meter, **9.6.5**: 5, **9.6.9**: 5
- Torque vs. speed curves, **1.3**: 83, 86f., 87f., 89f., 91f.
- Torsional analysis, **9.6.8**: 32
- Torsional forced response analysis of electric synchronous
 motor-coupling-pump shaft train, **9.6.8**: 55
 analysis, **9.6.8**: 55
 interpretation of results, **9.6.8**: 55
 model, **9.6.8**: 55
 validation, **9.6.8**: 56
- Torsional forced response analysis of motor-coupling-
 pump shaft train, **9.6.8**: 55
 analysis, **9.6.8**: 55
 interpretation of results, **9.6.8**: 55
 model, **9.6.8**: 55
 validation, **9.6.8**: 55
- Torsional rotordynamic analyses, **9.6.8**: 49, 55
 defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Torsional stiffness K , defined, **9.6.8**: 41
- Torsional vibration, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Total differential pressure (p_H), **6.1-6.5**: 28
 defined, **6.6**: 6, **7.6**: 6
- Total discharge head (h_d), defined, **1.1-1.2**: 70, **12.1-12.6**:
 34
- Total discharge pressure (p_d), defined, **7.6**: 6, **6.1-6.5**: 27,
6.6: 6
- Total gap, defined, **4.1-4.6**: 9, **5.1-5.6**: 16
- Total head (H) [H_{td}], defined, **1.1-1.2**: 70, **11.6**: 9
- Total inlet head (h_s), defined, **11.6**: 9
- Total input power (P_{mot}), defined, **3.6**: 7, **6.6**: 7
- Total outlet head (h_d) defined, **11.6**: 9
- Total pump length, **2.1-2.2**: 26, 27 f.
- Total suction head (h_s), closed suction test, defined, **1.1-1.2**:
 70
- Total suction head (h_s), closed suction, defined, **2.1-2.2**:
 32, **12.1-12.6**: 34
- Total suction head (h_s), open suction, defined, **1.1-1.2**: 69,
2.1-2.2: 32, **12.1-12.6**: 34
- Total suction lift, **6.1-6.5**: 31, **8.1-8.5**: 12
 defined, **6.6**: 6
- Total suction pressure, **6.1-6.5**: 27
 defined, **6.6**: 6
- Toxic liquids or vapors, **8.1-8.5**: 16
- Transducers pressure, **9.6.9**: 11
 velocity, **9.6.9**: 12
- Transducers, **7.8**: 12–13, **9.6.4**: 3
 accelerometer probes, **9.6.4**: 25
 handheld, **9.6.4**: 23, 23 f., 24
 magnetic mounts, **9.6.4**: 23, 23 f., 24
 mounting, **9.6.4**: 3, 4 f., 23, 23 f.
 permanent rigid mounts, **9.6.4**: 23, 23 f.
 proximity probes, **9.6.4**: 25
 sensitivity of different mountings, **9.6.4**: 23, 23 f.
 types, **9.6.4**: 25
 velocity probes, **9.6.4**: 25
- Transfer applications, **9.6.9**: 13
- Transient start-up evaluation, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Transition region, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 43
- Transport and storage section, **1.4**: 12, **2.4**: 12
 disposal of packaging materials, **1.4**: 15, **2.4**: 15
 electrical, **1.4**: 38
 long-term storage, **1.4**: 14, **2.4**: 15
 protective skid warning, **2.4**: 13
 receipt, inspection, and damage reporting, **1.4**: 12, **2.4**:
 13
 recommended storage environment, **1.4**: 13, **2.4**: 13
 rigging and lifting instructions, **1.4**: 12, **2.4**: 12
 short-term storage, **1.4**: 13, **2.4**: 14
 storage, **1.4**: 13, **2.4**: 13
 transport and handling requirements, **1.4**: 12, **2.4**: 12
 uncontrolled storage moisture protection, **1.4**: 13, **2.4**:
 14
 unpacking, **1.4**: 13, **2.4**: 13
- Transport applications, **12.1-12.6**: 45
 solids transport rate, **12.1-12.6**: 45, 46f.
- Transverse mass moment of inertia, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Trench-type intakes, **9.8**: 21–22
 approach flow, **9.8**: 22
 centerline spacing, **9.8**: 22
 end wall clearance, **9.8**: 22
 floor clearance, **9.8**: 22
 inlet conduit elevation, **9.8**: 22
 orientation, **9.8**: 21
 wet wells, **9.8**: 21, 21f.
 width, **9.8**: 22
- Trench-type wet wells
 anti-rotation baffle and vanes, **9.8**: 36

Trench-type wet wells — *Continued*

- approach flow, **9.8**: 35
- approach pipes, **9.8**: 77–79, 77f., 78t.–79t.
- auxiliary storage, **9.8**: 76–77
- cleaning procedure, **9.8**: 35
- constant-speed pumps in, **9.8**: 76
- design examples, **9.8**: 80
- inlet floor clearance, **9.8**: 35
- inlet splitters and cones, **9.8**: 36
- inlet transition, **9.8**: 35
- intake basin entrance conditions, **9.8**: 76–80, 77f., 78t., 79t.
- lining, **9.8**: 80
- objectives, **9.8**: 34–35
- performance enhancements for, **9.8**: 81–86, 82f.–84f.
- transition manhole, **9.8**: 80
- variable-speed pumps in, **9.8**: 76
- Trending, **9.6.9**: 28
 - defined, **9.6.5**: 56
- Trip delay timers, **9.6.9**: 7
- Troubleshooting
 - excessive power consumption, **5.1-5.6**: 46
 - insufficient differential pressure, **5.1-5.6**: 45
 - insufficient discharge flow, **5.1-5.6**: 44
 - loss of suction, **5.1-5.6**: 45
 - no discharge flow, **5.1-5.6**: 44
 - See Malfunctions, causes and remedies
- Troubleshooting guide section, **1.4**: 35, **2.4**: 40
 - bearing operation temperature, **1.4**: 38
 - bearing temperature, **2.4**: 43
 - electrical, **1.4**: 38, **2.4**: 43
 - flow, **1.4**: 36, **2.4**: 41
 - high power consumption, causes, **1.4**: 37, **2.4**: 42
 - hydraulic performance, **2.4**: 40
 - instrument locations, **1.4**: 38 f.
 - insufficient discharge, causes, **1.4**: 36, **2.4**: 41
 - insufficient pressure, causes, **1.4**: 35, **2.4**: 40
 - lack of discharge, causes, **1.4**: 36, **2.4**: 41
 - loss of suction, causes, **1.4**: 36, **2.4**: 40
 - mechanical issues, **1.4**: 37, **2.4**: 43
 - noise, **2.4**: 43
 - power, **1.4**: 37, **2.4**: 42
 - pressure, **1.4**: 35, **2.4**: 40
 - vibration, **1.4**: 37, **2.4**: 43
- Troubleshooting/system performance consideration (metering pumps)
 - pump, **7.8**: 16
 - system and piping, **7.8**: 16–17
- Turbine flowmeters, **9.6.9**: 13
 - in rate-of-flow monitoring, **9.6.5**: 19
- Turbines. See Pump as turbine (PAT); Regenerative turbine pumps; Steam turbines
- Turbulent region, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 42
- Two-phase pumping applications, **1.3**: 122, 122f.
 - and gas vents, **1.3**: 125, 125f.
 - and helico-axial pumps, **1.3**: 123, 123f.
 - and open impellers, **1.3**: 125
 - and progressing cavity pumps, **1.3**: 124
 - and screw-type pumps, **1.3**: 124, 124f.
 - and self-priming pumps, **1.3**: 123
 - and specific speed, **1.3**: 125
 - and top suction impellers, **1.3**: 125, 125f.
 - effect of gas on performance, **1.3**: 124, 125f.
 - gas and liquid applications, **1.3**: 122, 122f.
 - in biological fluid processing, **1.3**: 122
 - in oil production, **1.3**: 122
 - inducers or inlet boosters, **1.3**: 124
 - special features, **1.3**: 124
- Two-plane balancing (formerly called dynamic balancing), defined, **1.1-1.2**: 73, **2.1-2.2**: 37
- Type B forms, **14.6**: 73
- Type I test, **3.6**: 1
 - records, **3.6**: 13
- Type I, **3.6**: 1, 13
- Type II test, **3.6**: 1
 - records, **3.6**: 13
- Type II, **3.6**: 1, 13
- Type III test, **3.6**: 1
 - acceptable deviation of dependent test quantities from specified values for Type III and Type IV testing, **3.6**: 8
 - records, **3.6**: 13
 - reports, **3.6**: 16
- Type III, **3.6**: 1, 8, 13
- Type IV test, **3.6**: 1
 - acceptable deviation of dependent test quantities from specified values for Type III and Type IV testing, **3.6**: 8
 - records, **3.6**: 13
 - reports, **3.6**: 16
- Type IV, **3.6**: 1, 8, 13
 - witnessing of, **3.6**: 8
- Type number (*K*), **2.1-2.2**: 16
 - defined, **2.1-2.2**: 18
- Types of dynamic analyses for pumps and pump trains, **9.6.8**: 11
- Types of tests hydrostatic, **6.6**: 1
 - net positive suction head, **6.6**: 1
 - performance, **6.6**: 1
- Typical performance curve for rotodynamic pumps of lower specific speed design, **2.1-2.2**: 34 f.
- Typical range of stated motor reed frequency versus CG height, **9.6.8**: 79f.
- Typical range of stated motor reed frequency versus maximum motor diameter or flange, **9.6.8**: 80f.
- Typical range of stated motor reed frequency versus motor weight, **9.6.8**: 79f.
- Typical range of stated motor reed frequency versus torque, **9.6.8**: 78f.
- Typical swirl meter, **9.8**: 53f.
- Typical vertical pump impeller types with rings, **2.1-2.2**: 17 f.
- Typical vibration signature of discharge head/driver support with driver, **9.6.8**: 73f.

- Ultrasonic flowmeters, in rate-of-flow monitoring, **9.6.5**: 19
- Ultrasonic meters, **9.6.9**: 13
- Ultrasonic thickness measurement (UTM), **9.6.5**: 9
- UN Economic Commission for Europe Information Service, **5.1-5.6**: 48
- Unbalance response analysis, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Unbalance, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Uncertainty values, **9.6.8**: 13t.
- Uncertainty, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Unconfined intakes, **9.8**: 31f.
 - cross-flow velocities and pump location, **9.8**: 30
 - debris and screens, **9.8**: 31
 - submergence, **9.8**: 31–32
- Undamped torsional analysis, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Undamped torsional natural frequency analysis of (electric asynchronous) motor-coupling-pump shaft train, **9.6.8**: 49
 - analysis, **9.6.8**: 50
 - interpretation of results, **9.6.8**: 30
 - methodology, **9.6.8**: 49
 - model, **9.6.8**: 49
 - validation, **9.6.8**: 50
- Unit conversion factors, **11.6**: 67t., **14.6**: 84, 84 t. , **40.6**: 28 t.
- Unit conversions, **40.6**: 28
- Units of measure, **50.7**: 12, 21
- Unlined type, defined, **12.1-12.6**: 4
- Untimed screw pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 3t., 4t., 5f., 6f., 29f.
 - applications, **3.1-3.5**: 13
 - description, **3.1-3.5**: 12
 - materials of construction, **3.1-3.5**: 13
 - range chart, **3.1-3.5**: 13
 - three-screw double end, **3.1-3.5**: 14f.
 - three-screw single end, **3.1-3.5**: 14f.
- Upthrust
 - in runout condition, **2.3**: 42
- US customary units, **1.3**: 4, 5t.
- UV protection of pumping systems, **7.8**: 8
- UV protection, **7.8**: 8
- v. See Plunger or piston speed Valve seat area, **6.1-6.5**: 29, 30f.
- v. See Velocity
- Vacuum and/or heat control NPSH test with closed loop, **6.6**: 15f.
- Valve gear adjustments, **8.1-8.5**: 7, 7f.
- Valve gear, **8.1-8.5**: 6
- Valve plate type liquid end, **8.1-8.5**: 4f., 4
- Valve pot type, **8.1-8.5**: 4, 4f.
- Valves bypass, **9.6.9**: 8
 - recirculation, **9.6.9**: 8
 - relief, **9.6.9**: 8
- Valves, **7.8**: 16
- Vane pass frequency, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Vane pumps, **3.1-3.5**: 31f.
- Vapor pressure, **9.6.9**: 8
 - defined, **3.1-3.5**: 41
- Variable speed curve, **1.3**: 68, 68f.
- Variable speed operation, **9.6.8**: 43
- Variable-speed pumps, in trench-type wet wells, **9.8**: 76
- Variable-speed systems, **9.6.9**: 14
- V-belts, **3.1-3.5**: 59, 60f.
- Velocity head (h_v), defined, **1.1-1.2**: 69, **2.1-2.2**: 32, **11.6**: 8, **12.1-12.6**: 33
- Velocity pressure (p_v), **6.1-6.5**: 28, **8.1-8.5**: 11
 - definition and equation, **3.1-3.5**: 19, **3.6**: 5, **6.6**: 5
- Velocity profiles, **9.8**: 53, 57
- Velocity transducers, **9.6.5**: 15, **9.6.9**: 12
- Velocity, **8.1-8.5**: 10
- Venturi flowmeter example
 - calculation of individual device uncertainty and total uncertainty, **14.6**: 82 t.
 - calculation of individual device uncertainty and total uncertainty, **40.6**: 41 t.
 - calibration data and analysis, **14.6**: 82 t.
 - calibration data and analysis, **40.6**: 41 t.
 - differential pressure transducer calibration data analysis, **14.6**: 81 t.
 - differential pressure transducer calibration data analysis, **40.6**: 40 t.
 - differential pressure transducer calibration data, **14.6**: 81 t.
 - differential pressure transducer calibration data, **40.6**: 40 t.
 - differential pressure transducer information, **14.6**: 80 t.
 - differential pressure transducer information, **40.6**: 39 t.
 - output signal vs. pressure value, **14.6**: 81 f.
 - output signal vs. pressure value, **40.6**: 40 f.
 - signal measurement device information, **14.6**: 80 t.
 - signal measurement device information, **40.6**: 39 t.
 - venturi information - BIF 2-in s/n 12345, **14.6**: 80 t.
 - venturi information - BIF 2-in s/n 12345, **40.6**: 39 t.
- Venturi meters, **9.6.9**: 13
- Vertical cantilever sump pumps. See Sump pumps
- Vertical double suction, short setting, open line shaft (VS2), **2.1-2.2**: 7 f.
- Vertical double suction, single or multistage barrel or can pump (VS7), **2.1-2.2**: 13 f.
- Vertical end suction OH3A pump, **1.1-1.2**: 20 f.
- Vertical end suction OH5A pump, close coupled, built together, **1.1-1.2**: 23 f.
- Vertical in-line casing diffuser pump (VS8), **2.1-2.2**: 15 f.
- Vertical in-line pumps (ANSI/ASME B73.2)
 - adjustment factor basis, **9.6.2**: 14
 - applicable loads, **9.6.2**: 12
 - assessment of applied nozzle loads, **9.6.2**: 12
 - coordinate system, **9.6.2**: 11f.
 - criteria for loading allowances, **9.6.2**: 11
 - definitions, **9.6.2**: 11
 - Equation Set 6, **9.6.2**: 12t.
 - flange stress, **9.6.2**: 11
 - material specifications used in Table **9.6.2.2.5.2**, **9.6.2**: 14t.
 - maximum axial force, **9.6.2**: 12
 - maximum bending and torsional moments, **9.6.2**: 12

- Vertical in-line pumps (ANSI/ASME B73.2) — *Continued*
 - maximum forces and moments to assess applied loads, **9.6.2:** 13t.
 - maximum shear force, **9.6.2:** 12
 - maximum stresses in nozzles and flanges, **9.6.2:** 11
 - metallic pump temperature and material adjustment values, **9.6.2:** 15
 - nomenclature, **9.6.2:** 11
 - pressure/temperature, **9.6.2:** 12
 - scope, **9.6.2:** 10
 - temperature and material adjustment factors, **9.6.2:** 14
- Vertical motor reed critical frequency considerations, **9.6.8:** 76
- Vertical motor structures, **9.6.8:** 69f.
- Vertical multistage in-line pumps (VS8) and radial thrust, **2.3:** 7
- Vertical pumps, **6.1-6.5:** 1, 2f.
 - acceptable vibration levels at top of pump, **9.6.4:** 20 f.
 - background of recommendations, **9.6.4:** 21
 - characteristic curves, **2.1-2.2:** 20 f.
 - construction, **2.1-2.2:** 21
 - guidelines for motor vibration, **9.6.4:** 20
 - vibration measurement point, **9.6.4:** 20
- Vertical single or multistage, short setting, open line shaft (VS1), **2.1-2.2:** 5 f.
- Vertical structure natural frequency considerations, **9.6.8:** 68
 - graphical depiction of vertical pump/motor structure reed frequency versus motor reed frequency, **9.6.8:** 71
 - introduction, **9.6.8:** 68
 - job-specific motor reed frequency values for dynamic analysis, **9.6.8:** 72
 - motor reed frequency properties, **9.6.8:** 68
 - practical considerations - vertical pump/motor structures, **9.6.8:** 72
 - reed frequency characteristics of vertical structures involving motors, **9.6.8:** 68
 - use of motor reed frequency properties in a vertical pump/motor structure reed frequency calculation, level 1 analysis, **9.6.8:** 69
 - use of motor reed frequency properties in level 2 or level 3 analyses, **9.6.8:** 70
- Vertical structures, managing vibration, **9.6.4:** 19
- Vertical submersible turbine pumps (VSO) and radial thrust, **2.3:** 7
- Vertical tank, **9.8:** 69, 70f., 71f.
- Vertical turbine pumps
 - example assessments of applied nozzle loads (20-in mixed flow, above pump base steel discharge, 150 psi, 100 °F), **9.6.2:** 35
 - example assessments of applied nozzle loads (20-in mixed flow, aboveground stainless-steel type 316 discharge, 150 psi, 500 °F), **9.6.2:** 35
- Vertical turbine pumps (VTPs), vertically suspended and radial thrust, **2.3:** 7
- Vertical turbine pumps and axial thrust, **2.3:** 9
- Vertical turbine pumps, **20.3:** 5 t.
- Vertical turbine short set pumps (VS1 and VS2)
 - acceptance criteria for evaluation of pump design, **9.6.2:** 23
 - definitions, **9.6.2:** 19
 - maximum permissible forces and moments, **9.6.2:** 19
 - methodology, **9.6.2:** 19
 - nozzle loads for above pump base (floor) discharge pumps, **9.6.2:** 20f.
 - nozzle loads for below pump base (floor) discharge pumps, **9.6.2:** 21f.
 - scope, **9.6.2:** 18
- Vertical, axial flow impeller (propeller) type (enclosed line shaft) below-floor discharge configuration (VS3), **2.1-2.2:** 8 f.
- Vertical, axial flow impeller (propeller) type (enclosed line shaft) below-floor discharge configuration (VS3), **2.1-2.2:** 8 f.
- Vertical, multistage volute (double casing) barrel or can pump (VS7a), **2.1-2.2:** 14 f.
- Vertical, multistage, submersible pump (VS0), **2.1-2.2:** 3 f.
- Vertical, single, or multistage diffuser (double casing) barrel or can pump (VS6), **2.1-2.2:** 12 f.
- Vertically suspended (VS) type, **1.3:** 1, 110, 112f.
- Vertically suspended pump types and classifications, **2.1-2.2:** 2 f.
- Vertically suspended pumps, **1.1-1.2:** 4 f., 80
 - defined, **9.6.8:** 27
 - regenerative turbine icons, **2.1-2.2:** 80
- Vibration
 - in runout condition, **2.3:** 41
- Vibration acceptance tests, **9.6.4:** 4
 - factory acceptance test, **9.6.4:** 6
 - field acceptance test, **9.6.4:** 6
 - field test conditions, **9.6.4:** 7
 - general conditions, **9.6.4:** 6
 - installation and operating conditions, **9.6.4:** 6
 - pump locations for, **9.6.4:** 6
 - report form, **9.6.4:** 11, 12
- Vibration measurements and allowable values, **9.6.4:** 1
- Vibration monitoring, **9.6.9:** 12
 - applications, **9.6.9:** 12
 - condition indicators, **9.6.9:** 24t.
 - control limits, **9.6.9:** 13
 - frequency, **9.6.9:** 5t., 12
 - means of monitoring, **9.6.9:** 12
 - measurement practice, **9.6.9:** 12
- Vibration source identification, **9.6.4:** 22
- Vibration test, **11.6:** 4, 32
 - acceptance criteria, **11.6:** 33, 34 f.
 - objective, **11.6:** 32
 - procedure, **11.6:** 33
 - pump support, **11.6:** 32
 - records and report, **11.6:** 33
 - setup, **11.6:** 32
 - transducer location, **11.6:** 33 f., 33
 - vibration instrumentation, **11.6:** 33

- Vibration, factors affecting
 - abrasive fluids and residual mechanical unbalance of rotating parts, **9.6.4:** 17
 - hydraulic disturbances, **9.6.4:** 18
 - hydraulic resonance in piping, **9.6.4:** 18
 - mechanical problems, **9.6.4:** 17
 - pump and driver natural frequency and resonance, **9.6.4:** 17
 - residual mechanical unbalance of rotating parts, **9.6.4:** 13
 - rigidity, **9.6.4:** 19
- Violations, **40.7:** 8
 - corrected, **40.7:** 8
 - uncorrected, **40.7:** 9
- Viscosity defined, **3.1-3.5:** 37
 - effect on pump and system performance, **3.1-3.5:** 40, 41f.
 - of common fluids, **3.1-3.5:** 37, 37t.
 - units, **3.1-3.5:** 37
 - viscous response types, **3.1-3.5:** 38
- Viscosity low, **9.6.9:** 8
 - and power monitoring, **9.6.9:** 6
 - and rotary pump performance, **9.6.9:** 8
 - and temperature monitoring, **9.6.9:** 7
- Viscosity, **4.1-4.6:** 15, **7.8:** 11–12, **9.6.7:** 1
 - and head, **9.6.7:** 1
 - and NPSH3, **9.6.7:** 1
 - and power, **9.6.7:** 1
 - and rate of flow, **9.6.7:** 1
 - high, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - low, **4.1-4.6:** 16
 - resulting rotodynamic pump performance variation, **9.6.7:** 1
 - variable, **4.1-4.6:** 16
- Viscous correction factors for head, rate of flow, and efficiency, **9.6.7:** 2
- Viscous effects, **9.8:** 50
- Viscous fluid, defined, **9.6.7:** 1
- Viscous liquid effects, **1.3:** 81
- Viscous liquid performance correction limitations, **9.6.7:** 4
- Visual inspection, of leakage, **9.6.9:** 9, 10t.
- Vocabulary, standardization of, **50.7:** 2
- Volatile light hydrocarbons, **9.6.9:** 9
- Volatile organic compounds (VOCs), **9.6.9:** 9
- Volume (standard units), defined, **6.6:** 2, **7.6:** 4
- Volumetric efficiency (h_v), **6.1-6.5:** 29, **9.6.9:** 8
 - calculating for hydrocarbons, **6.1-6.5:** 61–65
 - calculating for water, **6.1-6.5:** 57, 58t., 59t.
 - defined, **6.6:** 7, **7.6:** 7
 - water compressibility, **6.1-6.5:** 58t., 59t., 61
- Volumetric losses, **9.6.7:** 19
- Voluntary termination, **40.7:** 6
 - prior to approval, **40.7:** 6
- Vortex (recessed impeller) pumps, **1.1-1.2:** 7
- Vortex pump, **1.3:** 14
- Vortex shedding, defined, **9.6.8:** 63
- Vortex suppression devices, **9.8:** 45
- Vortexing
 - in runout condition, **2.3:** 41
- VS pump structural natural frequency analysis (modal FEA), **9.6.8:** 52
 - analysis, **9.6.8:** 52
 - interpretation of results, **9.6.8:** 52
 - methodology, **9.6.8:** 52
 - model, **9.6.8:** 52
 - validation, **9.6.8:** 53
- VS4 line-shaft design sump pump alarms and controls, **2.3:** 69, 71 f.
 - application, **2.3:** 62, 66
 - design, **2.3:** 62, 63 f.
 - friction losses due to viscosity, **2.3:** 66
 - lubrication cleanliness, **2.3:** 69
 - materials components, **2.3:** 68
 - nozzle loads, **2.3:** 70, 71 f.
 - performance characteristics, **2.3:** 66
 - rate of flow vs. minimum submergence, **2.3:** 66, 67 f.
 - static component of, **2.3:** 66
 - tailpipe and float control, **2.3:** 66, 68 f.
 - temperature concerns, **2.3:** 69
 - temperature range of pump assembly, **2.3:** 69
 - terminology, **2.3:** 64
 - vaporproof/pressurized design, **2.3:** 69, 70 f.
- VS4-VS5. See Pump type VS4-Pump type VS5
- VS5 cantilever shaft design sump pump
 - alarms and controls, **2.3:** 76
 - application, **2.3:** 70, 72 f., 74
 - design, **2.3:** 70, 72 f.
 - friction losses due to viscosity, **2.3:** 74
 - materials components, **2.3:** 76
 - nozzle loads, **2.3:** 77, 77 f.
 - performance characteristics, **2.3:** 74
 - rate of flow vs. minimum submergence, **2.3:** 74, 75 f.
 - static component of, **2.3:** 74
 - tailpipe and float control, **2.3:** 76
 - temperature concerns, **2.3:** 76
 - temperature range of pump assembly, **2.3:** 76
 - terminology, **2.3:** 73
- Wall clearance C_w , **9.8:** 20
- Watches*, caution regarding, **4.1-4.6:** 23
- Water compressibility, **6.1-6.5:** 58t., 59t., 61
- Water cut (WC), defined, **3.1-3.5:** 23
- Water efficiency (η_w), defined, **12.1-12.6:** 42
- Water hammer analysis, **2.3:** 32
 - controlling, **2.3:** 32
 - defined, **2.3:** 32
- Water hammer, **1.3:** 82
 - defined, **1.4:** 30
- Water head (H_w), defined, **12.1-12.6:** 41
- Water horsepower. See Pump output power
- Water power (P_w), defined, **12.1-12.6:** 42
- Water/wastewater pumps, **9.6.1:** 10–11, 11t.
- Water-lubricated pumps. See Open line-shaft pumps
- WC. See Water cut
- Wear coefficient (W_c), defined, **12.1-12.6:** 44

- Wear considerations
 - erosion–corrosion, **12.1-12.6**: 61
 - particle impact, **12.1-12.6**: 58, 59, 60, 60f.
 - pump wear, **12.1-12.6**: 61–62
 - sliding abrasion, **12.1-12.6**: 58–60, 59f.
- Wear life, **12.1-12.6**: 63
 - and best efficiency point, **12.1-12.6**: 64, 64t.
 - and proper pump application, **12.1-12.6**: 63–64, 63t.
 - and radial shape of discharge casing, **12.1-12.6**: 64
 - and width of discharge casing, **12.1-12.6**: 64
- Wear rings, **1.3**: 13
- Weber number, **9.8**: 50
- Wet critical speed analysis, defined, **9.6.8**: 63
- Wet end. *See* Liquid end assembly
- Wet wells for solids-bearing liquids
 - cleaning procedures, **9.8**: 34
 - design principles, **9.8**: 32–33
 - horizontal surfaces near inlet, **9.8**: 34
 - vertical transitions, **9.8**: 33, 33f.
 - wet-well volume, **9.8**: 34
- Wetted materials of construction, **12.1-12.6**: 65
 - austenitic stainless steels, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - butyl, chlorobutyl, bromobutyl, **12.1-12.6**: 68
 - carboxylated nitrile, **12.1-12.6**: 68
 - chromium-molybdenum iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - chromium-nickel (NiHard) iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - compromise between erosion and corrosion resistance, **12.1-12.6**: 66
 - ductile iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - duplex stainless steels, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - elastomers bonded to metals, **12.1-12.6**: 66
 - elastomers, **12.1-12.6**: 66, 67–68
 - general suitability of, **12.1-12.6**: 65, 66t.
 - gray cast iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - hard irons, **12.1-12.6**: 67, 95
 - high-chromium iron, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - hydrogenated nitrile, **12.1-12.6**: 68
 - irons, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - martensitic stainless steels, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - metal specification equivalents, **12.1-12.6**: 106–108
 - metals, **12.1-12.6**: 66
 - natural rubber, **12.1-12.6**: 67–68
 - nitrile, **12.1-12.6**: 68
 - polychloroprene (neoprene), **12.1-12.6**: 68
 - polyurethane, **12.1-12.6**: 68
 - stainless steels, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - super-duplex stainless steels, **12.1-12.6**: 67
 - synthetic rubber elastomers, **12.1-12.6**: 68
- When analysis is recommended, **9.6.8**: 11
- Wire-to-water efficiency, **11.6**: 46
 - compared with pump efficiency, **11.6**: 45
- Work process designations, **50.7**: 12, 13
- Work process, **9.6.8**: 2t.
- Working pressure (p_d)[$p_{2\ max\ op}$], defined, **1.1-1.2**: 72, **2.1-2.2**: 37, **12.1-12.6**: 37
- XML
 - as basis for EDE, **50.7**: 1, 8
 - defined and described, **50.7**: 2
 - See also* AEX XML Schema
- XPaths, **50.7**: 28
 - deployment requirements and constraints, **50.7**: 28
- XSD file names and associated namespaces, **50.7**: 27
- Y-strainers, **7.8**: 16
- Z. *See* Elevation head
- Zebra/quagga mussel, **9.8**: 108
- η . *See* Efficiency
- η_{OA} . *See* Overall efficiency
- η_p . *See* Pump efficiency
- η_p . *See* Pump mechanical efficiency
- η_v . *See* Pump volumetric efficiency
- η_v . *See* Volumetric efficiency
- λ , determination, **40.6**: 18

